

# INDEX

<b>Subject</b>	<b>Pg.No.</b>
<b>History</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Geography</b>	<b>61</b>
<b>Civics</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>Economics</b>	<b>192</b>

# History

<b>Chapter Name</b>	<b>Pg. No.</b>
<b>Rise of Nationalism in Europe</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Nationalism In India</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>Making of Global World</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Age of Industrialization</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>Print,Culture and Modern World</b>	<b>47</b>

# The Rise Of Nationalism in Europe

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. By which name the 'Civil code of 1804' of France is generally known with?**

**Answer:** The 'Civil code of 1804' of France is also known with the name 'Napoleonic code.' It is because it contains such rights ordered by Napoleon such as equality before the law, right to property, simplification of the administrative system, restrictions on guild was removed, the feudal system was abolished, etc.

**Q. 2. What did the idea of la Patrie and le citoyen signify in the French Revolution?**

**Answer:** The idea of la Patrie (the fatherland) and le citoyen (the citizen) in the French Revolution signify that community should enjoy equal rights under the constitution of the country and this created the sense of collective identity among the French People.

**Q. 3. Among the social and political class, which was dominant in Europe in the mid- 18th century?**

**Answer:** Landed aristocracy was the dominant class in Europe in the mid- 18th century among the social and the Political class. Their unity was based on their collective agenda even though they were a small group. They hold estates and townhouses and spoke French to maintain the diplomatic view.

**Q. 4. What is Zollverein?**

**Answer:** In 1834, Zollverein or customs union was established by the Prussia, and most of the German states joined this. According to this, tariff barriers were abolished, and the number of currencies was reduced from thirty to two.

**Q. 5. The independence of which country was recognised by the Treaty of Constantinople of 1832?**

**Answer:** The Treaty of Constantinople of 1832 recognised the independence of Greece. It was through the support of the Nationalists in Greece, west Europeans, poets, and artists that in 1832 Treaty of Constantinople recognised Greece as an independent country.

**Q. 6. Why was the decade of 1830's known as great economic hardship in Europe?**

**Answer:** Sudden increase in population, the decrease in employment opportunities, the growth of industrialization at other places, increasing food prices and peasants faced

struggle, all these reasons made the decade of 1830's as great economic hardship in Europe.

**Q. 7. What is the significance of the year 1848 for France?**

**Answer:** The year 1848 was the year which witnessed great hardships. The population of Paris suffered from food shortages and unemployment. The following were the significance of the year 1848 for France –

- Republic was formed which provided suffrage, i.e., the Right to Vote in political elections to all the male adults above 21 and promised Right to work. Accordingly, national workshops were set up to provide employment opportunities.
- It also brought the refusal or rejection of the Monarchical power in France in 1848.

**Q. 8. Who was Friedrich Wilhelm IV?**

**Answer:** Friedrich Wilhelm IV was the king of Prussia from 1840-1861. He opposed the elected assembly of German and supported the monarchs. Even though he was a true conservative, he adopted less strict policies and also promised people to form the constitution in future. But since he supported the Monarchs, he rejected the proposal to form an elected legislative assembly.

Interestingly, he is referred to as the 'Romanticist on the Throne'.

## **Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. How did the 18th-century artists begin personifying a nation in an allegory?**

**Answer:** In the 18th and 19th-century, artists began personifying a nation in an allegory. It means artists personified nation as a female figure not as a woman of real life but as a figure with physical existence and in concrete form. Thus, nation personified as a female figure became an allegory.

NOTE: Allegory is the term given to the story, poem or to a picture or to the feeling when its hidden meaning is revealed through personifying it. Here, the nation is personified as a person.

**Q. 2. What does the crown of oak leaves worn by Germania stand for?**

**Answer:** In the 18th and 19th-century, artists began personifying a nation in an allegory. Germania was the female figure personifying German nation. In the figure, she wears the crown of oak leaves which stands for Heroism.

**Q. 3. Identify the countries which comprised the Balkan Peninsula.**

**Answer:** The Balkan was a region with diversity, ethnicity and geographical variation, which comprised of following countries – Modern day Romania, Bulgaria, Greece, Albania, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia- Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia, and Montenegro. Its inhabitants were known as Slavs.

**Q. 4. Who were the inhabitants of Balkan region?**

**Answer:** The inhabitants of the Balkan region were known as Slavs. They are mostly from the different countries which come under the Balkan Peninsula which are - Modern day Romania, Bulgaria, Greece, Albania, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia- Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia, and Montenegro.

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. Identify the end result of nationalism during the 19th century.**

**Answer:** During the 19th century, the end results of nationalism were the following:

- It became a belief system with a narrow creed, i.e., not discriminating on the basis of creed or race.
- As a result of nationalism, nationalist groups became uncontrollable and were always ready to wage war.

As a result, the European powers took advantage of the situation and manipulated the nationalists in Europe to achieve their own imperialist aims.

**Q. 2. Who was made the constitutional monarch by in 1830 in France?**

**Answer:** Bourbon Dynasty was overthrown by the Liberal revolutionaries. In July 1830, Liberal revolutionaries made Louis Philippe, the head of the constitutional monarchy in France.

**Q. 3. Which country is known as the cradle of civilisation?**

**Answer:** Greece is known as the Cradle of European civilisation. It was titled so that Poets and artists could gain public opinion to fight against the Muslim empire. This way it helped Greeks to fight for their independence.

**Q. 4. Name the founder of the secret society, 'Young Italy.'**

**Answer:** Giuseppe Mazzini was the founder of the secret society, 'Young Italy.' It was founded in the year 1831. Mazzini formed this secret society to spread his thoughts and goals to achieve unification of Italy.

**Q. 5. Name the battle which Napoleon lost in 1813.**

**Answer:** In 1813, the Battle of Leipzig also known as the battle of nations was lost by Napoleon. After losing for the first time against the coalition army of Russia, Prussia, Austria, and Sweden, Napoleon returned to France.

**Q. 6. Artists in 18th and 19th centuries found a way out by personifying a nation. What was it?**

**Answer:** Yes, it is true that artists found a way out by personifying a nation. In the 18th and 19th century, artists began personifying a nation in an allegory. It means artists personified nation as a female figure not as a woman of real life but as a figure with physical existence and in concrete form. Also, Germania, the female figure personified as the German nation. In this figure, she wears the crown of oak leaves which stands for Heroism. There is one more image where Germania is standing with the sword for protecting the Rhine River. In the 19th century, a popular Christian name – Christened Marianne was shown as a symbol of People's nation. Her characteristics were – the red cap, the tricolour, the cockade. Her statues were made and also she was shown on the coins and stamps to make people remember their unity and identity.

**Q. 7. What was the end result of 19th-century nationalism?**

**Answer:** Nationalism became a belief system with a narrow creed, i.e., not discriminating on the basis of creed or race. As a result of nationalism, nationalist groups became uncontrollable and were always ready to wage war. Later, the European powers took advantage of the situation and manipulated the nationalists in Europe to achieve their own imperialist aims. This was the end result of 19th-century nationalism.

**Q. 8. Name the journalist who designed the cover of a German Almanac in 1798.**

**Answer:** Andreas Rebmann who lived in the city of Mainz, was the journalist who designed the cover of a German Almanac in 1798. He was a member of the German Jacobin Group.

**Q. 9. Which were the two obstacles in the way of Italian unification?**

**Answer:** The two obstacles in the way of Italian unification were:-

- The population of Italy was divided according to several dynasties and Multi-national Habsburg Empire. Italy was divided into seven states – North was ruled by Austria Habsburgs, Southern regions were ruled by Bourbon Kings of Spain, etc.

- There was not one Italian language or a common Italian language instead it had many regional and local variations which show that Italy was not unified in terms of culture.

**Q. 10. What is plebiscite?**

**Answer:** Plebiscite is the term given to the process where the direct vote is done, and all the people of that particular region are asked to accept or to reject this direct vote proposal. It is a suitable option for smaller countries like Switzerland where the costs and time won't be an issue.

**Q. 11. Name the French artist who prepared a series of four prints visualising his dreams of a world.**

**Answer:** Frederic Sorrieu, was a French artist who prepared a series of four prints visualising his dreams of a world. It was made of 'democratic and social republics' and called them first Print. It showed the people of Europe and America paying homage to the statue of Liberty as the cross or march in a long train.

**Q. 12. What do you mean by nationalism? Mention some factors which gave rise to nationalism.**

**Answer:** The term Nationalism refers to develop sentiments or views towards one's own country. It is the knowledge regarding the social, political and economic aspect of the society or of the nation to promote its interests or beliefs. Some factors which gave rise to Nationalism were:

- Films, novels, Symbols, folklore, history, and songs motivated people and generated such feelings which inspired them to know their true identity and evoke the sentiments for their nation.
- Some images or figures, for example – the image of a female figure not as a woman of real life but as a figure with physical existence and in concrete form. Also, Germania, the female figure personified as the German nation. In this figure, she wears the crown of oak leaves which stands for Heroism. She is also shown with the sword protecting the Rhine River. All this inspired the citizens of the country.
- Many nationalists groups emerged when they saw incidents which made other countries attaining their goals and independence. For example – the events at Balkan which eventually became the major factor of the First World War inspired others to fight for their own rights.
- Nationalists began to travel to different regions to collect folktales and to preserve those so that the individual could identify his national identity and generate the pride for its nation.
- At the end of the 19th century, the reinterpretation of history gave rise to the nationalism.

**Q. 13. Why did nationalists tension emerge in the Balkans? Explain the reasons.**

**Answer:** The nationalist's tension arose in the Balkans due to the following reasons which were: -

- Many parts of the Balkan were under the control of the Ottoman Empire. The idea of romantic nationalism and the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire intensified the situation, even though Ottoman Empire tried to strengthen its position by introducing reforms but didn't succeed, so the Balkan people demanded independence and political rights. They also proved that they were always free but later suppressed by foreign powers.
- In Balkan, Slavic Nationalities were in search of their identity and independence made the situation worse. The Balkan states wanted to capture more territories no matter how; this made Balkans a big power rivalry.
- During this time, the European powers conflicted on trade, colonies, naval and military. European powers - Russia, Germany, England, Austro-Hungary, wanted to establish their dominance in Balkan.

All this led to the Nationalists groups to fight for their rights.

#### **Q. 14. What was the spirit of conservatism?**

**Answer:** Conservatism includes those who believe in the importance of tradition and wanted development to happen by establishing proper institutions and customs. The spirit of conservatism was to preserve traditional institutions of the state and the society which were – the monarchy, the church, social hierarchies, property, and the family.

#### **Q. 15. Which social class spearheaded the nationalist movement in Europe? Describe its main demand.**

**Answer:** Peasants, educated middle class such as professionals, commercial class, industrialists, etc., were social class spearheaded the nationalist movement in Europe. Their demands were:

- To create such government which should be formed based on elections.
- To have the right to vote, right to form associations and other basic rights.
- To abolish all the privileges given to the rich people based on birth.
- To create such rules and laws which promote trade and increase wages and employment opportunities.
- Politically and socially, all the laws should be made in consideration with all the sections of the society.



**Q. 16. Explain any three reasons that helped Greek people to win the war of independence against the Turkish rule.**

**Answer:** The three reasons that helped Greek people to win the war of independence against the Turkish rule were: revolutionary and the nationalistic ideas in Europe generated nationalistic sentiments amongst the Greeks who were since the 15th century were the part of the Ottoman Empire. This led to the start the struggle for independence from 1821.

- West Europeans and other Greeks living in exile supported nationalists in Greece and had sympathies for ancient Greek culture.
- Poets and artists named Greece- The the cradle of European civilisation. In this way, they gained public opinion to fight against the Muslim empire.
- Lord Byron, English poet, collected funds and also fought to win the Greek war of independence.

Finally, in 1832, the Treaty of Constantinople was signed making Greece as an independent nation.

**Q. 17. Describe any three consequence of liberal revolution of 1848.**

**Answer:** The three consequence of liberal revolution of 1848 were:

- In February 1848, Republic was formed which provided suffrage, i.e., the right to vote in political elections to all the male adults above 21 and promised right to work. Accordingly, national workshops were set up to provide employment opportunities. It also brought the refusal or rejection of the monarchical power in France in 1848.
- Liberal middle-class population including men and women demanded Constitutionalism with the goal of national unification.
- Overall, the idea to create a nation states based on 3 principles were –a Constitution, Freedom of the press and Freedom of association.

**Q. 18. What was the impact of Act of the union on Scotland?**

**Answer:** In 1707, The Act of Union on Scotland with England led to the formation of the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain' and England successfully influenced Scotland. Following were the impact of the Act of Union on Scotland:

- Majority of the members of the British parliament were English people. Thus, growing British identity affected and suppressed the culture and political institution of Scotland.

- The Catholic clans living in the Scottish Highlands got affected the most as they were suppressed whenever they fought for their independence.
- The Scottish Highlanders were not allowed to speak Gaelic language and to wear national dress. They were also thrown out from their homeland.

**Q. 19. Like Germany, Italy too had a long history of political fragmentation. Justify.**

**Answer:** Yes, it is true that Italy had a long history of political fragmentation. It is said so because –

- The population of Italy was divided according to several dynasties and Multi-national Habsburg Empire. Italy was divided into seven states – like Sardinia- Piedmont was the only region ruled by Italian princely house, Pope ruled the Centre, North was ruled by Austria Habsburgs and southern regions was ruled by Bourbon Kings of Spain.
- There was not one Italian language or a common Italian language instead it had many regional and local variations which show that Italy was not unified in terms of culture.

All this shows that Italy like Germany was politically fragmented and was unstable.

**Q. 20. Otto von Bismarck was the architect of ‘German unification.’ Explain.**

**Answer:** Yes, it is true that Otto von Bismarck was considered as the architect of ‘German unification.’ Otto von Bismarck, who along with Prussian army and bureaucracy completed the process of German Unification. Following were the reason which proves that Otto Von Bismarck contributed significantly to German Unification and became its architect –

- The middle-class population of Germany decided to unite the different regions of German Confederation into a nation with an elected parliament. The group of the large landowners called Junkers of Prussia supported the combined forces of military and monarchy. In this process, Prussia participated and took up the leadership and Otto von Bismarck became its Chief Minister.
- He carried out this process of national unification with Prussian army.
- In this process, three wars took place with Austria, Denmark, and France. Prussia won and eventually the process of unification was completed.

Thus Otto von Bismarck along with his Prussian army came out as the architect of German unification.

**Q. 21. Describe any four features of the Vienna Treaty of 1815 in Brief.**

**Answer:** The treaty of Vienna of 1815 stated that all the changes that had come due to the Napoleonic war should be reversed. The four features of the Vienna treaty of 1815 were:-

- The Bourbon dynasty which was removed forcefully was brought back into power. Under Napoleon whichever the territories was acquired by France was lost again.
- On the boundaries of France, series of states established which prevented expansion of France, such as in the North-kingdom of Netherlands was set up; in the South Genoa was set up; on its western frontier - new territories and a portion of Saxony was given to the Prussia; the control of Northern Italy was given to Austria, and the part of Poland was given to Russia in the east.
- Napoleon established German confederation of 39 states which remained an untouched subject.
- The main feature of the treaty of Vienna was to re-establish all the monarchies thrown out by Napoleon and; in Europe new conservative order was created.

**Q. 22. The Balkan issue became one of the major factors responsible for the First World War. Explain by giving examples.**

**Answer:** The Balkan was a region with diversity, ethnicity and geographical variation, which comprises of following countries – modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Greece, Albania, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia- Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia, and Montenegro. Its inhabitants were known as Slavs. The Balkan issue become one of the major factors responsible for the First World War. Some of the examples were –

- Many parts of the Balkan were under the control of the Ottoman Empire. The idea of romantic nationalism and the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire intensified the situation, even though Ottoman empire tried to strengthen its position by introducing reforms but didn't succeed, so the Balkan people demanded independence and political rights. They also proved that they were always free but later subjugated by foreign powers.
- In Balkan, Slavic Nationalities were in search of their identity and independence made the situation worse. The Balkan states wanted to capture more territories no matter how; this made Balkans a big power rivalry.
- During this time, the European powers conflicted on trade, colonies, naval and military. Russia, Germany, England, Austro-Hungary wanted to establish their power in Balkan.

All these were the examples that made Balkan issues as the major factor responsible for the First World War.

**Q. 23. Explain how did the 18th and 19th-century artist begin personifying a nation in allegory.**

**Answer:** Artists in France found a way out by personifying a nation. In the 18th and 19th century artists begin personifying a nation in an allegory. Allegory is to reveal the hidden meaning of something or giving a form to formless. It means artists personified nation as a female figure not as a woman of real life but as a figure with physical existence and in concrete form. Also, Germania, the female figure personified as the German nation. In this figure, she wears the crown of oak leaves, and German oak Leaves stands for Heroism. There is one more image where Germania is standing with the sword for protecting the Rhine River.

During the French revolution, artists created allegory by personifying a female figure as a symbolism of Liberty, Justice, and Republic. Specific objects and symbols were used to personify this. Like this only, in the 19th century, a popular Christian name – Christened Marianne was shown as a symbol of People's nation. Her characteristics were – the red cap, the tricolour, the cockade. Her statues were made and she was shown on coins and stamps to make people remember their unity and identity.

**Q. 24. Who was Count Camillo de Cavour? Mention his contributions.**

**Answer:** Count Camillo de Cavour also known as Cavour, was the Chief Minister of Italy. He was not a democrat or a revolutionary but an Italian statesman who actively participated in Italian unification. He spoke French better than Italian. His contributions were:

- He was one of the individuals who fought for the unification of Italy. He took the initiative to unify the regions of Italy by inspiring people through his ideas.
- He introduced several economic reforms in his native place in Piedmont and Risorgimento was the political newspaper started by him.
- In 1859, Sardinia Piedmont successfully defeated the Austrian forces. This was possible because Count Camillo de Cavour formed the diplomatic alliance.
- With his diplomacy, he successfully made Piedmont a new great power in Europe.
- He practiced such policies which were adopted during post-Italy unification.

**Q. 25. 'The development of nationalism did not come about only through wars and territorial expansion.'**

**Answer:** 'The development of nationalism did not come about only through wars and territorial expansion', it was said so because – wars and territorial expansion were not the only two reason behind the development of nationalism, but there were many other reasons which were:-

- Art and poetry, stories and music which are the part of Culture and traditions also played a significant role in the development of nationalist sentiments.
- The concept of Romanticism developed during that time gave rise to the group of romantic artists who started expressing emotions, intuitions, and mystical feelings through their art. They criticised reason and science. Example – Johann Gottfried Herder, German Philosopher, believed that German culture should be introduced among the common people, which should be possible only through folk songs, poetry, and dances. So, the collection of such tradition was necessary for the development of the nationalism.
- Vernacular Language became the medium to spread the messages as it was essential to include those people too in this goal who were illiterate. For example – in Poland which was not an independent territory kept generating their nationalistic sentiments through music and Language.
- Language became an essential part of this development. For example – Russians imposed the Russian language everywhere and removed polish language from the schools. This incident made other clergy members to use polish as a weapon against their rule. In church gatherings and religious occasions also, polish language was used. Even though Russians punished all those who used Polish language but the use of it served as a symbol to achieve their own freedom against the Russian rule.

**Q. 26. How did a wave of economic nationalism strengthen the wider nationalist sentiment growing in Europe? Explain.**

**Answer:** The wave of economic nationalism strengthen the wider nationalist sentiment growing in Europe due to the Following Reason:-

- The movement of liberalism started with the goal to achieve freedom of markets and to abolish restrictions imposed on the movement of goods and capital.
- Napoleon introduced such administrative measures which created countless principalities. All these small principalities had their own system of currency, weights, and measures. So if the merchants had to travel across, he had to cross around 11 customs barriers and pay customs duty on each item which was 5% per item. This problem created a wave of Economic Nationalism.
- Duties on the goods were imposed on the basis of weights and measures. Also, different regions had their own system of weights and measures which were often time-consuming task.
- New Commercial classes demanded unified economic territory to allow the movement of goods, people and capital without any hindrance.

- In 1834, Zollverein or customs union was established by the Prussia, and most of the German states joined this. According to this, tariff barriers were abolished, and the number of currencies was reduced from thirty to two.
- Railway system was created, and it improved mobility which controlled the Economic interests of the people; ultimately strengthened the nationalist sentiment of the people.

## Nationalism in India

---

### Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Which act gave the government power to suppress political activity and detain political prisoners without trial?**

**Answer:** Rowlatt Act gave the government power to suppress political activity and detain political prisoners without trial.

- a. The Rowlatt Act was passed in the year 1919.
- b. This Act gave enormous powers to the British Government.
- c. The provisions of the Act empowered British Government to suppress any sort of political activities thereby enabling the detention of Indian nationalists and prisoners without any trial for two years.
- d. The Act was passed without considering the opposition of the Indian members.
- e. There was a nationwide agitation against this Act.
- f. Mahatma Gandhi organised nationwide Satyagraha.
- g. Rallies were organised, and shops were closed.
- h. Workers went on strike in railway workshops.

Thus, the Rowlatt Act, in a way, paved the root for united opposition against the British.

**Q. 2. Besides Gandhiji who were the main leaders of Khilafat Movement?**

**Answer:** The First World War had ended with the defeat of Ottoman Turkey, and there were rumours that a harsh peace treaty was going to be imposed on the Ottoman Emperor.

1. In order to defend the Khalifa's temporal powers, a Khilafat Committee was formed in Bombay in March 1919.
2. A young generation of Muslim leaders like the brothers Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali began discussing with Mahatma Gandhi about the possibility of united mass action.

This took the form of the Khilafat movement.

**Q. 3. Name the Sabha headed by Jawahar Lal Nehru and Baba Ramchandra.**

**Answer:** Oudh Kisan Sabha was set up headed by Jawaharlal Nehru, Baba Ramchandra and a few others.

1. In Awadh, a movement was led by Baba Ramchandra against the talukdars and landlords.
2. The peasants were asked to pay high rents and cesses.
3. Peasants had to do begar, a form of labour that villagers had to contribute without any wages.
4. The movement demanded the abolition of begar, reduction of revenue and social boycott of oppressive landlords.
5. Jawaharlal Nehru went around the villages to understand the grievances of the villagers.

Thus, in June 1920, Oudh Kisan Sabha was started.

#### **Q. 4. Who was Alluri Sitaram Raju?**

**Answer:** Alluri Sitaram Raju was an independence nationalist from Andhra Pradesh.

1. He was an ardent follower of Mahatma Gandhi.
2. When the hill people were forced to contribute begar, Sitaram Raju led them against the British.
3. He was considered as an incarnation of God.
4. His astrological predictions were correct, and he could heal many people.
5. He was capable of surviving even bullet shots.
6. He insisted people wear Khadi clothes and stop taking liquor.
7. Even though he was attached to Gandhian principles, he believed in the use of force to achieve independence.
8. He, with his followers, tried to kill British officers and attacked police stations.

Alluri Sitaram Raju was trapped by the British and was executed in the year 1924.

#### **Q. 5. Why did the Non-Cooperation Movement gradually slowdown in the cities?**



**Answer:** The Non-Cooperation Movement started with middle-class participation in the cities. Government schools and colleges and foreign clothes were boycotted, and liquor shops were picketed.

1. The movement in the cities gradually slowed down for a variety of reasons.
2. The boycott of British institutions posed a problem, Indian institutions were slow to come up.
3. The mass-produced mill cloth was cheap when compared to the expensive khadi cloth. People started buying foreign clothes as they could not afford higher prices.

Hence, the Non-Cooperation movement was gradually withdrawn in cities.

## **Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. When and where the demand of 'Purna Swaraj' was accepted by the Congress?**

**Answer:** The demand of Purna Swaraj was accepted by the Congress at the Lahore session of Congress in the year 1929.

- a. In this session, the declaration of 'Purna Swaraj' or complete independence was passed.
- b. The Congress requested the Indians to celebrate 26th January 1930 as the Independence Day.
- c. This resolution of Purna Swaraj was the beginning of the political movement against the colonial rule.
- d. The political, economic and cultural injustice towards the Indians was mentioned in the resolution.
- e. The launching of the Civil Disobedience movement was mentioned very clearly in the resolution.

The resolution of Purna Swaraj was a symbolic event in the history of India.

**Q. 2. What is Hindu Mahasabha?**

**Answer:** Hindu Mahasabha was a Hindu nationalist organisation. It is said that this Sabha was formed to protect the rights of Hindus when India was under British dominance.

**Q. 3. During which movement was the Indian tricolour flag designed?**

**Answer:** The Indian tricolour flag was designed during the Swadeshi movement in Bengal in 1921.

1. The flag which was first designed had three colours Red, Green and Yellow.
2. It had eight lotuses. These eight lotuses represented the eight provinces of British India.
3. The flag had a crescent moon which represented Hindus and Muslims.
4. By 1921, the flag was again designed with Red, Green and White.
5. This flag had a shining wheel at the centre.
6. This wheel represented the Gandhian ideal of self-help.

This tricolour flag was called the 'Swaraj Flag' during the independence movement.

**Q. 4. Who has first created the image of Bharat Mata?**

**Answer:** The image of Bharat Mata was created by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay.

1. The image created was painted by the famous Rabindranath Tagore.
2. Bharat Mata was picturised as a form of Hindu Goddess.
3. She was calm, composed and divine.
4. The image was shown as dispensing learning, food and clothing.
5. Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay wrote 'Vande Mataram' as a hymn to the nation.

The image of Bharat Mata symbolised India and developed a feeling of nationalism among the Indians.

**Q. 5. Name the person who worked for the revival of folk culture in Madras.**

**Answer:** In Madras, Natesa Sastri worked for the revival of folk culture.

1. He published a four-volume collection of Tamil folk tales.
2. The collection was titled The Folklore of Southern India.
3. According to him, "the folklore was the most trustworthy manifestation of people's real thoughts and characteristics".

Natesa Sastri also stated that the folklore was national literature.

## **Self Assessment**

### **Q. 1. Why was the Kheda Satyagraha launched by Gandhiji?**

**Answer:** Kheda Satyagraha was launched by Gandhiji in the year 1917. The Kheda Satyagraha was in support of the peasants who were unable to pay revenue due to crop failure and a plague epidemic. The satyagraha demanded relaxation in revenue collection.

### **Q. 2. Why was the Simon Commission boycotted?**

**Answer:** The Simon Commission was appointed in the year 1929. The Simon Commission was constituted under Sir John Simon.

1. The commission was set up to look after the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes.
2. However, they did not have a single Indian member, which was a huge problem.
3. When the Simon Commission arrived in India in 1928, it was greeted with the slogan, 'Simon, Go Back'.

Hence, the Simon Commission was boycotted as it did not have any Indian representation.

### **Q. 3. When was Non-Cooperation boycotted?**

**Answer:** The Non-Cooperation movement was called off in 1922 by Mahatma Gandhiji. This was because of the Chauri Chaura incident. A peaceful demonstration in a bazaar turned into a violent clash with the police killing many British police officers. Gandhiji felt that people should be properly trained to follow the three principles of Satyagraha-Truth, Ahimsa and Non-violence before any mass struggles.

### **Q. 4. Name the personality who organised the Dalits into the Depressed Classes Association.**

**Answer:** Dr B.R. Ambedkar organised the Dalits into the Depressed Classes Association in 1930. But he clashed with Mahatma Gandhi at the Second Round Table conference. He demanded separate electorate for Dalits. Gandhiji felt that granting of the separate electorate may harm the unity of our country and weaken the freedom struggle. Hence, they both signed the Poona Pact in 1932.

### **Q. 5. Who created the first image of Bharat Mata?**

**Answer:** The first image of Bharat Mata was created by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay.

1. The image created was painted by the famous Rabindranath Tagore.
2. Bharat Mata was picturised as a form of Hindu Goddess.
3. She was calm, composed and divine.
4. The image was shown as dispensing learning, food and clothing.
5. Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay wrote 'Vande Mataram' as a hymn to the nation.

The image of Bharat Mata symbolised India and developed a feeling of nationalism among the Indians

**Q. 6. What did the idea of Satyagraha emphasise?**

**Answer:** The idea of Satyagraha emphasized the power of truth and the need to search for truth.

It suggested that if the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary to fight the oppressor.

**Q. 7. Under whose leadership was the Non-Cooperation Movement started in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh?**

**Answer:** The Non-Cooperation movement in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh was led by Alluri Sitaram Raju.

1. Alluri Sitaram Raju led the militant guerrilla movement in the early 1920s in the Gudem Hills.
2. This was a protest against the British Government which prevented the hill people from entering the forests, collecting fuelwood and grazing the cattle.
3. Sitaram Raju, who was considered as an incarnation of God, persuaded the rebels to wear Khadi clothes and stop taking liquor.
4. Under his leadership, Gudem rebels attempted to kill the British officials, raided on Police stations. Guerilla warfare was carried on to achieve independence.

Thus, the rebellion at Gudem Hills was in response to Gandhi's Non-Cooperation movement.

**Q. 8. Who led the Peasant Movement in Awadh during the Non-Cooperation Movement?**

**Answer:** Baba Ramchandra led the peasant movement in Awadh during the Non-Cooperation movement. Baba Ramchandra was a sanyasi. He launched this movement against the talukdars and landlords. The peasants of Awadh had to do a begar. This movement was started demanding reduction in revenue, the abolition of begar and social boycott of the oppressive landlords.

**Q. 9. What was the reaction of the people to the Rowlatt Act?**

**Answer:** The Rowlatt Act was passed in the year 1919 much against the opposition of the Indian members. The Act empowered the British Government to suppress the political activities and detain the political prisoners for two years without any trial.

There was a stout reaction from the Indians.

1. Mahatma Gandhi launched the nationwide satyagraha.
2. Shops were closed.
3. Rallies were organised in many parts of the country.
4. Workers went on strike in railway workshops.

Thus, the Rowlatt Act called for a nationwide protest against the British Government.

**Q. 10. During the period of Non-Cooperation Movements, who claimed to have a special power, could heal people and survive bullet shots?**

**Answer:** Alluri Sitaram Raju was claimed to have a special power that could heal people and survive bullet shots. Alluri Sitaram Raju was believed to be the incarnation of God. He was very accurate in his astrological predictions and could heal people.

**Q. 11. Why did General Dyer open fire on the peaceful gathering at Jallianwala Bagh on 13th April 1919?**

**Answer:** Jallianwala Bagh massacre was an important incident in the history of India. Many people had gathered at Jallianwalla Bagh at Amritsar in Punjab on the 13th of April 1919. Many men, women and children were present to attend the meeting against the Rowlatt Act. General Dyer ordered the British Army to block the entrance. He suddenly ordered his men to start firing on the crowd without any warning. Many Indians were brutally murdered, and many others were killed and injured.

**Q. 12. What was the result of the Poona Pact of September 1932?**

**Answer:** Poona Pact was signed between Dr B.R. Ambedkar and Mahatma Gandhi.

1. The Pact gave depressed classes reserved seats in the provincial and central legislative councils but to be voted in by the general electorate.
2. Earlier, Ambedkar and Gandhiji clashed at the Second Round Table Conference as Ambedkar demanded separate electorate for the Dalits.
3. Mahatma Gandhi was against this as he felt that granting a separate electorate would weaken the independence movement affecting the unity among Indians.

Hence, this Pact was signed to resolve the demand.

**Q. 13. What is the meaning of the term 'boycott' in respect of national movement?**

**Answer:** The term 'boycott' meant the refusal to participate in activities, or buy and use things that belonged to the British Government. It was one of the ways used by the people during the Non-Cooperation movement.

**Q. 14. When and where did Mahatma Gandhi successfully organise Satyagraha Movements just after arriving in India?**

**Answer:** Several Satyagraha movements were launched by Mahatma Gandhi after his return from South Africa. Champaran, Kheda, Ahmedabad etc., were some of those places.

Champaran:

Mahatma Gandhi went to Champaran in the state of Bihar in the year 1916 and started Satyagraha along with the peasants as a struggle against the exploitative plantation system.

Ahmedabad:

Another Satyagraha movement was launched in the year 1918. This movement was organised among the workers of cotton mills.

Kheda:

Gandhiji started another Satyagraha movement in Kheda in the year 1918, demanding relaxation in revenue collection. The peasants of Kheda were unable to pay the revenue due to crop failure and a plague epidemic.

After these movements, Gandhiji decided to launch another Satyagraha movement against the Rowlatt Act in the year 1919.

**Q. 15. Why was Non-Cooperation a Powerful method of resistance?**

**Answer:** Non-Cooperation was a powerful method of resistance following the principles of non-violence and ahimsa.

1. It was a passive resistance led by Gandhiji in the year 1920.
2. It involved the boycott of British goods and clothes.
3. Even the titles conferred by the British Government were surrendered.
4. Council elections were boycotted.
5. Indians were requested to boycott government controlled schools and colleges.

Thus, the powerful resistance was the first ever nationalist movement in India in the struggle of independence against British which united all the sections of Indians.

**Q. 16. "The plantation workers in Assam had their own understanding of Mahatma Gandhi and nation of Swaraj." Support the statements with arguments.**

**Answer:** 1. The workers were not permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission as per the provisions of the Inland Emigration Act, 1859.

2. Thousands of workers left the plantations and went home.
3. They believed that they all would be given land in their own village when Gandhi was coming.
4. However, they were all caught by the Police and beaten up.
5. According to the workers, Swaraj meant the right to move freely in and out of the restricted space which will enable them to stay in link with their village.

The workers believed that Gandhiji was the true identity of Swaraj, even to relieve them from all sort of troubles.

**Q. 17. Suggest at least three difference between the Civil Disobedience and the Non-Cooperation Movement.**

**Answer:** The following are the differences between the Civil Disobedience Movement and the Non-Cooperation movement.

<b>Civil Disobedience Movement</b>	<b>Non-Cooperation Movement</b>
1. The Civil Disobedience movement was started in the year 1930.	1. This movement was started in the year 1921.
2. This movement was launched by Mahatma Gandhiji when the British power refused his eleven demands.	2. This movement was started by Gandhiji as a protest against the Rowlatt Act and the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre.
3. There was huge participation of women. They supported Gandhiji by playing an active role in the protests and manufacturing salt.	3. Women did not participate in the movement as such.
4. People abstained from cooperating with the British and broke colonial laws.	4. People were urged to not cooperate with the British.

Even though both these movements were nationalist movements started by Gandhiji, the Civil Disobedience Movement was more successful.

**Q. 18. Describe the various problem in unifying people in India by the end of the 19th century.**

**Answer:** The nationalists made sincere efforts to unify people against the British Government. It was not an easy task to unify them. The following were some of the problems involved in the process:

1. The past history of India was based on facts about Hinduism and Hindu mythologies.
2. The images that were celebrated were drawn from Hindu iconography.
3. This made the people of other communities feel isolated.
4. Moreover, Mahatma Gandhiji's leadership tried to channel people's grievances into an organised movement.
5. However, there was participation from people belonging to different groups and classes each having their own aspirations and expectations.
6. Hence, the meaning of freedom from the British rule was interpreted in different ways by different societies of people.
7. The demands of one group did not alienate each other.
8. It was the leaders who constantly worked to unite all classes of people and tried to resolve their grievances.



9. There were episodes of frequent disunity and conflicts between the different groups of people.

Thus, unifying people with different views of freedom was difficult, but our leaders strived hard to free our country from the British clutches.

**Q. 19. 'A Satyagraha wins the battle through non-violence'. Explain with examples.**

**Answer:** Satyagraha is always a powerful weapon following the path of ahimsa and non-violence.

1. Satyagraha followed the idea that if the cause was true and if the struggle was against injustice, then there is no need for physical force to fight against the oppressor.

2. Gandhiji followed Satyagraha during his stay in South Africa to fight the injustice.

3. He decided to take the path of Satyagraha after arriving in India.

4. He fought for the welfare of peasants in Kheda district of Gujarat demanding the relaxation in revenue collection. The peasants could not pay high revenue due to crop failure and a plague epidemic. The British Government agreed and deferred the payment of revenue to next year.

5. He also travelled to Champaran to inspire peasants. He launched satyagraha to struggle against the exploitative plantation system. The British Government passed an Act to ensure the welfare of the peasants.

6. He launched another Satyagraha in 1918 among the mill workers of Ahmedabad. The workers got a hike in their pay after Gandhiji's intervention.

These are fine examples to show that Satyagraha always wins battles through non-violence.

**Q. 20. Why did the Muslim community not join the struggle during the Civil Disobedience Movements? Give reasons.**

**Answer:** Some of the Muslim organisations showed less interest in their response to Civil Disobedience Movements.

1. A large part of the Muslim population in the country was separated from the Congress after the failure of the Non-cooperation and Khilafat movement.

2. Hindu nationalist groups like the Hindu Mahasabha was closely associated with the Congress.

3. This led to the straining of ties between the Hindus and Muslims.
4. Communal clashes and riots spread across the country as each community was involved in organising their own religious processions and campaigns.
5. M.R. Jayakar who belonged to the Hindu Mahasabha was not ready to compromise with the demand of Muhammad Ali Jinnah, leader of the Muslim League. Jinnah demanded reserved seats for Muslims in the Central Assembly, and he wanted separate representation for the Muslims in Bengal and Punjab.
6. This widened the gap between the two communities.
7. Hence, the majority of the Muslims did not respond to the call for Civil Disobedience Movement.

Thus, alienation from the Congress and distrust among the Hindus and Muslims were the main reasons for the poor response to the call for united struggle.

**Q. 21. Examine any four cultural processes through which Indian nationalism captured people's imagination.**

**Answer:** People should believe that they all belong to the same country. This sense was developed by the united struggles against the British to some extent. The following are some of the cultural processes through which Indian nationalism captured people's minds.

1. History and Fiction:

- a. Reinterpretation of history served as an important tool in creating a feeling of nationalism among Indians.
- b. As the Britishers felt that Indians were primitive, Indians started to reinterpret history to know about their achievements.
- c. During ancient times, religion and culture, art and architecture, science and mathematics, trade etc., flourished. Articles on these were written to inspire people.
- d. It was also mentioned that there was a huge decline in these areas when Britishers started colonising India.
- e. The history of glorious India made the readers to inculcate the urge for freedom from the British clutch.

2. Popular prints and Symbols:

- a. A nation is always identified with a figure or an image.

b. The image of Bharat Mata, portrayed by Abanindranath Tagore came to be the symbol of identity of India.

c. Tricolour flag, which was called as Swaraj flag, designed by Gandhiji also instilled nationalism among Indians.

### 3. Folklore and Songs:

a. Indian nationalists went around many villages to gather their traditional folk tales.

b. Movements were launched to revive the traditional Indian folklore.

c. These folktales played a major role in restoring one's national identity and developing a sense of pride.

### 4. Hymns:

Hymns like Vande Mataram and 'Swaraj is my birthright' were widely sung to capture nationalism.

Nationalism, thus, spreads only if there is a feeling of oneness among all the people of a country.

## **Q. 22. Explain the reaction of the business class towards the Civil Disobedience Movements.**

**Answer:** Civil Disobedience Movement was accepted in different forms by different classes of society. The support given by the business class was a big boost to the movement.

1. The Civil Disobedience Movement was welcomed by the business class during the early phase of the movement.

2. Monetary support was extended, and the business class refused to buy or sell the Manchester goods.

3. The businessmen expected to have independent business units without any colonial restrictions being imposed.

4. They wanted the smooth functioning of trade and other industries without any constraints.

5. But the support given by the business class was withdrawn when Gandhiji relaunched the movement after the failure of the Round Table Conference.

6. They did not want their business to be disrupted.

Thus, the business class extended warm support when the Civil Disobedience Movement was launched.

**Q. 23. How did salt march become an effective tool of resistance against British colonial power?**

**Answer:** The Salt March was an effective tool of resistance against British colonial power.

1. Mahatma Gandhi was very much against the levy of tax on salt and monopoly of the Government over its production.
2. He felt that salt was the essential food item having no disparity between the rich and the poor.
3. Hence, he stated that it was an atrocity of British power.
4. He decided to launch a movement to exempt salt from tax.
5. Lord Irwin, the then Viceroy was sent a letter from Gandhiji stating eleven demands.
6. The Primary demand was to withdraw the tax on salt and make it tax-free.
7. Since the British side showed reluctance, Gandhi started the salt march.
8. It was called as Dandi March, where he walked 240 miles from his Sabarmati Ashram to Dandi.
9. He was accompanied by about seventy-eight followers.
10. After reaching Dandi, the coastal town, he boiled sea water and manufactured salt, thus violating the salt law.
11. By this, he persuaded people to break colonial laws and started Non-cooperation movement against the British power.

This Dandi March or the Salt March, thus, can be rightly said as the first powerful protest against the British.

# The Making Of a Global World

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Name the route which linked Asia with Europe and Northern Africa.**

**Answer:** Silk

In the 8th century, silk was among the first goods to be transported from China in Asia to Europe and South Africa. Hence, the name 'Silk Route'. This eventually became a very important link to connect many countries in the pre-trade era. Soon, textiles and spices also began to be traded from India and South Asia. Also, precious metals such as gold and silver were imported from Europe to Asia. This route helped not only for the trade of goods but also for the exchange of cultural ideas and knowledge. Many Christian and Muslim scholars travelled through this route. Later, Buddhism also spread in the same manner.

**Q. 2. Name the crop that made a difference between life and death in Europe in the mid-1840s.**

**Answer:** Potato

Potato was imported from America to Europe. In the mid-1840s, it became the staple food of many people in Europe and formed a major portion of their daily diet. At one time in Ireland, the potato crop had failed. This led to starvation among the people and eventually death.

**Q. 3. What is 'El Dorado' in South America famous for?**

**Answer:** City of Gold

El Dorado was a fabled city of gold. It is said to be in South America, in the 17th century. Many expeditions were carried out in search of it but resulted into a fruitless trek.

**Q. 4. Name the Europeans who first conquered America in the mid- 16th century.**

**Answer:** Portugal and Spain

The two European countries of Portugal and Spain had conquered a vast portion of America in the mid 16 century. This conquest was possible due to the superior quality of military equipment, Apart from this, another unconventional reason for conquest was the germs of smallpox, carried by Europeans to America. Since the people living in America lived in isolation and did not have any immunization against it, it led to the spread of smallpox among them. Eventually, many people died in America, which further strengthen their conquest.

**Q. 5. How did rinderpest reach Africa?**

**Answer:** From East Africa

Rinderpest was a fatal disease. It had entered through British Asia. East Africa had imported cattle from British Asia to feed the Italian soldiers fighting in their country. The cattle were infected, and thus, this disease had spread among the people. This led to the migration of many people from Africa to other parts of the world.

**Q. 6. What was the main destination of Indian indentured migrants?**

**Answer:** Caribbean Islands, Fiji, and Mauritius

The main destination of Indian indentured migrants was Caribbean Islands (mainly Trinidad and Tobago), Fiji and Mauritius. Indentured worker means a worker who has agreed to work for an employer for a specific period of years. They were brought here as a replacement of the African slaves.

**Q. 7. What is Hosay?**

**Answer:** An annual Muharram procession.

Hosay was an annual carnival in the remembrance of Muharram which took place in Trinidad. People from different cultures were a part of this carnival. A procession took place on the street full of colourful mausoleums.

## **Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. Name the World's first model of car which was produced on assembly line.**

**Answer:** Ford

Henry Ford had first developed the assembly line method of manufacturing cars in the USA in the 1920s. He had adopted it from the assembly line system in a slaughterhouse. He had noticed that the slaughtered animals were collected through a conveyer belt by the butchers. He then adapted this line into the production of cars. This led to an increase in the work speed of the worker and the absence of delay of any kind of work. This led to the production of cars only at a three-minute interval.

**Q. 2. Name the country from which Britain borrowed large sums of money during the First World War.**

**Answer:** USA

Britain had borrowed large sums of money from US banks and US public during the First World War. This was to fund the country in terms of military weapons, food supplies etc. This made the US an international creditor.

**Q. 3. Why did the wheat price in India fall down by 50 per cent between 1928 and 1934?**

**Answer:** Due to depression

The Great Depression in 1929 had a major effect on prices, income, and production of goods in many countries. India also faced many such negative effects in the rural segments. One such effect was the decline in the wheat prices. It fell to almost 50% during 1928-1934. This, in turn, worsened the plight of the farmers. There was a large amount of unused crop and nobody to purchase it.

**Q. 4. When did Gandhiji launch the Civil Disobedience Movements?**

**Answer:** In March 1930

Explanation: Civil Disobedience meant refusal by the general public of the country to accept a particular law or rule imposed by the government. This movement was started by Mahatma Gandhi in March 1930 in India, in response to the Salt law imposed by the British government. This law stated that the price of salt would be increased to a thousand times. Gandhiji thought that salt is a basic necessity of life which is required by everyone. This was a nonviolent form of protest centred around Salt.

**Q. 5. Name the organisation which was formed by the former colonies to demand a New International Economic Order (NIEO).**

**Answer:** G-77

Explanation: G-77 was set up on 15 June 1964, by 77 countries. These were developing countries that demanded NIEO i.e, New International Economic Order. They did so as they had not gained any benefit from the fast growth as experienced by the Western countries.

**Q. 6. Which institutions were known as 'Bretton Woods twins'?**

**Answer:** International Monetary Fund (IMF) and World Bank.

Explanation: IMF and World Bank were set up after the Second World War to assist the countries in financial matters. These 2 institutions are together called the Bretton Wood twins or Bretton Woods Institutions. IMF overlooked the economic conditions of the member countries and offered financial advice. World Banks offered loans to such countries for the development of its economic and social infrastructures.

**Q. 7. When did MNCs develop worldwide?**

**Answer:** In 1602

Explanation: The first MNC is considered to be the Dutch East India Company, which was set up on 20 March 1602. It had set up its headquarters in Amsterdam, Netherland. It traded in India, Asia-Pacific region and South Africa. It traded spices, porcelain, silk, meat, rice, sugarcane etc.

**Q. 8. Why did the finances and competitive strength of US weaken in the 1960s?**

**Answer:** Due to the falling cost of overseas involvement

Explanation: The US dollar could not maintain its value in term of gold. This led to an end of the fixed exchange rate system and the introduction of a floating exchange rate system.

**Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. In Trinidad, what was referred to as 'Hosay'?**

**Answer:** Hosay was a procession in the remembrance of Muharram, celebrated every year in Trinidad. People belonging to different religions and races actively participated in this carnival. There was a parade of different colored mausoleums and Mosque tombs.

**Q. 2. Name the countries where 'Chutney music' is popular.**

**Answer:** Chutney Music was popular in Trinidad and Guayana. It was a mix of music from different parts of the world which gave it a unique form. It was originally created by the Indo Carribean of the West Indies. It integrated different cultures and was formerly performed by women only. It also uses many folk instruments such as harmonium, drums, and dholak.

**Q. 3. When did the Great Depression begin?**

**Answer:** The Great Depression started in the 1930s in the USA and rapidly spread to other parts of the world. This led to a fall in the production, employment and income level of many countries. It had a much greater effect in the US and Europe and a little mild in other countries. The rural segments faced serious repercussions. The Dustbowl created in Midwest and overproduction led to the loss of previously fertile land. The US dollar's value in terms of gold fell which led to a demand for a new exchange system. The country then shifted from a fixed exchange rate system to a floating exchange rate system. The US also became an international creditor to many countries such as British Asia. It had a severe and long-lasting effect on the world.

**Q. 5. What do you mean by G-77?**



**Answer:** The G-77 was formed by 77 developing countries that demanded a New International Economic Order (NIEO) because they felt that they had not benefited from the fast growth as experienced by the Western countries between 1950 and 1960. These were the developing countries who wanted to have a proper control over their natural resources, fair authority in the decision of its prices and a better opportunity to trade their goods in the market of the Western countries. They were also against apartheid and favored global disarmament. Currently, there are 134 countries. The chairmanship is held by Egypt. In 2019, Palestine will occupy this position.

**Q. 6. The export of fine Indian textile to England decline in the 19th century. State why?**

**Answer:** The export of fine Indian textile to England had declined in the 19th century due to the spread of the Industrial Revolution in the latter. This has led to an increase in the production of machine-made textile by the British industries. They, in turn, forced their government to restrict trade with other countries.

**Q. 7. Which country was known to be a dominant supplier of wheat in the world market?**

**Answer:** The countries of Eastern Europe were said to be a major supplier of wheat.

**Q. 8. What do you understand by India underwent lesser impact of the Great Depression?**

**Answer:** During the Great Depression, there was a continuous decline in agricultural prices. The peasants were forced to sell their jewelry to meet their daily expense. This gold was then exported to Britain. Moreover, only the rural India had to face the issues, not urban India. Thus, it is said that India had undergone a lesser impact of it.

**Q. 9. Which class of people in India underwent lesser impact of the Great Depression?**

**Answer:** The urban class of India had undergone a lesser impact of the Great Depression. They were given their salaries and could buy things at a cheaper price. It was the rural segment which had a major impact due to the Great Depression.

**Q. 10. Name the protest religion which was made popular by Bob Marley.**

**Answer:** The protest religion made popular by Bob Marley is Rastafarian. It was a religious and political movement in the West Indies. It had a different dress code of dreadlocks and smoking of cannabis.

**Q. 11. What was the impact of technology on food availability?**

**Answer:** With the great changes in technology, there was rapid urbanization and industrialization in Britain along with the population growth in the 18th century. This led to an increase in the demand for agricultural products. This implied that food grains could now be imported at a cheaper price. With the increase in industrialization, people started to receive a higher income which leads to an increase in the consumption of the food. This, in turn, leads to an increase in the exports of food production in Eastern Europe, Russia, and the USA.

**Q. 12. What was the impact of technology on food availability?**

**Answer:** The G-77 was formed by 77 developing countries that demanded a New International Economic Order (NIEO) because they felt that they had not benefited from the fast growth as experienced by the Western countries between 1950 and 1960. These were the developing countries who wanted to have a proper control over their natural resources, fair authority in the decision of its prices and a better opportunity to trade their goods in the market of the Western countries. They were also against apartheid and favored global disarmament. Currently, there are 134 countries. The chairmanship is held by Egypt. In 2019, Palestine will occupy this position.

**Q. 13. What is rinderpest? Who brought it to Africa? How did rinderpest help the Europeans to conquer Africa?**

**Answer:** Rinderpest is a fatal cattle disease.

It was brought into Africa through the cattle that were imported from British Asia.

It had entered Africa through the Eastern part of the country and had soon spread to the Southern part as well. It had killed almost 80% to 90% of the cattle. It had greatly affected the transport system of the country. Since there was no source of meat and milk, the Africans suffered a lot due to starvation and lost their livelihood. The Europeans saw this as an opportunity to conquer and control the scarce resources of Africa.

**Q. 14. What were the steps taken by European employers to retain the Africa labours?**

**Answer:** The European employers had taken the following steps to retain the African laborers:

- i) The European government imposed a heavy taxation system which could be paid by the African laborers only by working for the Europeans.
- ii) They were kept in closed circuit areas and were not allowed to move freely.

iii) A new inheritance law was issued stating that only one family member will inherit the land and the rest will move into the labor market.

**Q. 15. Why do we say that there was no war like the First World War?**

**Answer:** The First World War had begun in 1914 and continued for the next 4 years up to 1918. It led to a great economic and political instability in many countries of the world. It was a war among all the leading industrial nations. Since it was the first industrial war many heavy types of equipment were used. Many soldiers were recruited and most of them were either injured or dead. Since the industries were pushed to produce war related goods and men were sent on the battlefield, the women began to work in the industries. It had also ended the economic links between different countries. Hence it is said that there was no war like the First World War.

**Q. 16. Why did the price of jute fell down between 1928 and 1934?**

**Answer:** The period between 1928 to 1934 is called as the Great Depression. India had also faced severe effects of this. Bengal was a major state producing jute. Jute was used to make gunny bags. With the depression period, the demand for gunny bags fell. This, in turn, led to a fall in the price of jute by almost 60 percent.

**Q. 17. What industrial practices were adopted by Henry Ford to speed up the production of cars? How did he tackle the problem of workers?**

**Answer:** A major development that took place in the 1920s in the US economy was the introduction of mass production. It was an important and notable feature of the industrial production of the country. Henry Ford had speeded up the production of cars using the assembly line system.

1. Henry Ford had adapted this idea from the assembly line system of the slaughter houses in Chicago. He had noticed that the slaughtered animals were collected through a conveyer belt by the butchers.
2. He then adapted this line into the production of cars. The idea behind this was that by the presence of a conveyor belt, the worker would work mechanically at an increased speed by doing the same work again and again.
3. This would also lead to the absence of any delay of work as the product would be in front of them at a conveyor belt.
4. This led to the production of cars only at a three-minute interval.
5. However, this also had a big disadvantage. With the increase in the work and necessary speed required to do so, many workers started to quit.

6. To retain the workers, Henry increased the wage to \$5 in 1914. He also banned any form of train union.

This method of Ford soon spread to other parts. Since the cost had declined due to mass production, there was an increase in demand for cars by the workers earning higher incomes. The production of cars had increased from 2 million to 5 million within a span of ten years from 1929 to 1939.

**Q. 18. Analyse the effect of the First Worlds war on the world economy.**

**Answer:** The first world war had started in 1914 and ended in 1918. It was fought between Britain, Russia, France and USA on one side and Germany, Austria, Hungary, and Ottoman Turkey on the other side.

1. CHANGE IN POWER: Before the war, Britain was leading in the world economy. During the war, many developing countries had developed their industries. After the end of the war, Britain was unable to compete internationally with these industries. It had also taken a large amount of loan and had a huge external debt.

2. FALL OF DOMESTIC ECONOMY: The World War had led to an increased in the production of war-related goods which led to an increase in employment. Post war, both these areas suffered. Many countries also faced a serious crisis in the agricultural sector,

3. GREAT DEPRESSION: The period from 1929 to mid-1930 is known as the period of the Great Depression. It was due to many factors which led to a fall in production and employment levels.

4. RURAL SEGMENT: The rural segment faced serious repercussions as there was overproduction accompanied with a fall in prices. The farmers were unable to meet their expenses. The crops rotted as there was no one to buy them.

5. WITHDRAWAL OF LOANS: US was a major financier to many countries in Europe. But when the situation worsened, the investors started taking their loans back. Many Europeans banks had failed and faced an acute financial crisis.

The First World War that was assumed to be a localized war that would end soon, lasted for a long time. Many countries were affected with it in one or the other, i.e. changes in the level of production, employment, income, and trade.

**Q. 19. Give three example to show that the worlds changed with discovery of new sea routes of America.**

**Answer:** Before the 16th century, America was developing in isolation. With the discovery of sea routes to America, its rich sources could be utilized in other parts of the world as well.

The 3 main changes that took place are as follows :

- i) Peru and Mexico had many silver mines. These were then traded with the European countries. Many even began their expedition to El Dolarado, a fabled city of gold in South America.
- ii) Portuguese and Spaniards had conquered a major part of America using firearms and germs of smallpox. Since, the people of America were living in isolation and had no immunity for it, most of the natives died. This led to an easier conquest.
- iii) Religious conflicts began among different sections of society. The Europeans brought slaves from Africa to work in the large plantations set up by them in America.

With the discovery of sea route to America, goods and labour began moving westward.

**Q. 20. Explain how travels and trade helped in establishing among various countries.**

**Answer:** Since ancient times, human travelled a lot to different places for different reasons.

1. They travelled when the agricultural capacity of the land got exhausted in search of newer fields or sometimes in search of some resources.
2. This travelling and settling down resulted in sharing of ideas, knowledge, habits, etc.
3. They carried with them different food items, culture, plants, etc. Along with these, there was exchange of skills which enhanced the creative aspect of humans.
4. Travels also resulted in migrating of germs and diseases to different places thus resulting in spread of diseases to longer distances.

# **The Age Of Industrialisation**

## **Check Point 01**

### **Q. 1. Who manufactured a new model of the steam engine?**

**Answer:** A steam engine is a machine that does mechanical work by using heat as its the main ingredient. The new model of the steam engine was made by James Watt and Mathew Boulton. They both worked hard and opened a mill that was called the Boulton and Watt in Birmingham, England in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

### **Q. 2. Who Created the cotton mill?**

**Answer:** A cotton mill is a machinery that is usually set up inside the building. It does the work of weaving and spinning and produces cotton yarn or basically cotton cloth. This machine was created in 1771. The cotton mill was created by Richard Arkwright.

### **Q. 3. Why was the demand of labours seasonal?**

**Answer:** The seasonal demand for labour means that the labour that is required by the industries is depended on the season that is present there. Mostly the labour is required during a particular season in a very large number, and as the season , passes, the labour requirement becomes zero. In many industries, the work was seasonal, so the employers demand for labourers was seasonal. This can be explained as follows: Many industries had worked only during certain months and seasons of the year. The gas work industries were also busy during the winter months.

- The demand for certain labour was seasonal like, breweries, where beer was made was busy during winter seasons.
- Bookbinders and printers catered to the festive season of Christmas. Winter was also the month where ships were taken for cleaning.

All these industries needed extra labour during their time of the year and thus in the rest of the month's labour was without work.

### **Q. 4. Who were the competitors of the East India Company in the textile industry in the eighteenth century?**

**Answer:** In the eighteenth century, it was not only the Indian subcontinent that was producing cotton, but other countries were also giving their best.

The East India Company was going well until in the eighteenth century the European country companies became their competitors. These European companies took the concessions on various reasons and taxes and took the monopoly right of trade among various places of the globe where textiles were high in demand. The Portuguese,

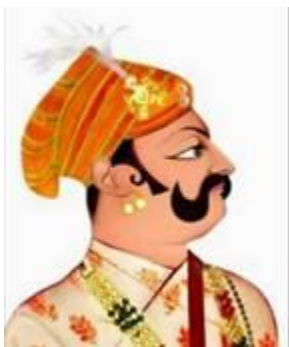
French and Dutch came in the market as the major competitors for woven cloth. This affected the East India company textile production on a large scale.

**Q. 5. Which product in India dominated the international market before the age of machine industries?**

**Answer:** Before the age of machine industries, silk and cotton were the goods that had dominated all the markets of the international arena. The cotton and textiles produced in other countries were coarse, and the one produced in India was very fine in quality, and thus the countries in the fertile crescent and the south Asian countries like Persia, Saudi Arabia and Germany traded goods from India across the seaports.

**Q. 6. Who were gomasthas?**

**Answer:** The East India company of textiles appointed paid labour servants who were responsible for supervising weavers, collecting the supplies and examining the quality of cloth they were called "GOMASTHAS".



A Gomastha of the eighteenth century, painting on wood.

## Check Point 02

**Q. 1. What was the nationalist message of Swadeshi regarding advertisements?**

**Answer:** The Swadeshi movement gave the message to boycott the foreign made cotton and other clothes as this made India dependent and thus people would never be developed neither will there be any development of the country in terms of industrial production. This movement asked the government to increase the tariff of foreign goods for the protection of the domestic economy.

The companies protested for their collective interest and asked the government to give the producers other concessions.

**Q. 2. Name the Indian Gods and goddesses which were generally used by the foreign manufacturer.**

**Answer:** God Krishna, Saraswati, Lakshmi, Kartikeya and even maharaja Ranjit Singh was found in many imported goods. These god and goddesses goods were used by international and foreign manufacturers.

**Q. 3. When and where the first cotton mill was set up?**

**Answer:** The first cotton mill was set up in Bengal which was located in the eastern part of the Indian subcontinent in 1854. A cotton mill is machinery that is usually set up inside the building, it does the work of weaving and spinning, after doing these two functions the machine produces cotton yarn or basically cotton cloth.

**Q. 4. Name some famous Indian industrialists of the 19th century.**

**Answer:** Dinshaw Petit, a Parsi, was the founder of the first textile mills in India.



Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata who had built a huge industrial empire in India.



Seth Hukumchand was a Marwari businessman was famous for launching first jute mill in Calcutta





G.D Birla who is a famous industrialist his, father and grandfather were also one of the famous and prominent industrialists of Indian nationality.

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. What was spinning Jenny?**

**Answer:** It was invented by James Hargreaves; the spinning jenny was a machine that speeded up the process of spinning. Thus, reducing the demand for labour. What was done by 10 workers could be done by one on a single spinning jenny and many spindles could be spun on it with loads of bundles of cotton.

**Q. 2. Name the person who created the cotton mill in England.**

**Answer:** Richard Arkwright created the cotton mill in England in Cromford, Derbyshire in 1771. It marked the move away from home production to mass manufacturing in factories.

**Q. 3. Who established six joint-stock companies in India during 1830-40?**

**Answer:** A joint stock company is basically a company in which there are different shares which are held by shareholders; It is a business entity which can be sold in shares by shareholders.



Dwarkanath Tagore established the six joint-stock companies in India during the 1830s and 40s.

**Q. 4. Where was the first cotton mill set up?**

**Answer:** A cotton mill is a machinery that is usually set up inside the building; it does the work of weaving and spinning, after doing these two functions the machine produces cotton yarn or basically cotton cloth.

The first cotton mill was set up in Bengal in 1854, and the first cotton mill of England was created by Richard Arkwright in 1771.

**Q. 5. How did the Indian and British manufactures try to expand their market?**

**Answer:** The British and Indian manufacturers both started focussing on the international and overseas.

They emphasized more on expanding their business outside the respective countries and places.

Both the manufactures made exports their priority. This led to the expansion of their business.

**Q. 6. Where were most of the large-scale industries located in 1911?**

**Answer:** The large-scale industries were located in Bengal and Bombay during the 20<sup>th</sup> century in 1911. One of the reasons for this was their location along the sea. Since these two were port cities, it helped the Britishers in trading in foreign markets.

**Q. 7. Whom did the British Governments appoint to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth?**

**Answer:** Gomasthas were appointed for the supervising of weavers, collecting supplies and examining the quality of cloth. The East India Company of textiles appointed paid labour servants who were responsible for supervising weavers, collecting the supplies and examining the quality of cloth they were called "GOMASTHAS".



A Gomastha of eighteenth-century a wooden painting.

**Q. 8. What was the trade guild? Explain.**

**Answer:** Trade guild was an association or organisation of all the merchants, craftsmen and labourers who used to oversee their practice of trade and craft work of either a particular place or of the area where they lived.

**Q. 9. The First World War created dramatically a new situation for Indian. Analyse how this happened by giving three situations.**

**Answer:** World War 1 had a dramatic effect on India. This can be analysed by:

- The British mills started focussing on the needs of the war, so imports to India declined.
- Indian mills now had a vast home market to supply its goods.
- The war needs were also given to the Indian mills to cater to.
- New mills were set-up, and the earlier ones were running for a large number of hours.
- New workers were employed, and more and more people were employed as the demand for cotton increased dramatically.

**Q. 10. What were the problems of Indian weavers in the early 19th century?**

**Answer:** In the early 19<sup>th</sup> century Britishers started exporting their machine-made clothes to the Indian subcontinent.

The export market of India collapsed on a large scale.

There was a shortage of raw cotton as all was exported to the United Kingdom.

And due to the American Civil War, the supplies to Britain were cut down, and thus the amount of import to England increased on a large scale.

**Q. 11. Why was there no shortage of human labour in Victorian Britain in the mid-19th century? Explain.**

**Answer:** In the Victorian United Kingdom, there was no shortage of labour because a huge amount of labourers moved from villages leaving their hometown and travelling to cities for work.

Labour was present on a large scale, so the wages were very low and cheap.

**Q. 12. Why did the poor peasants and artisans in the countryside begin to work for the merchants from the towns?**

**Answer:** As the industrial era came, huge amounts of land were taken and converted into industries. The labours didn't have any option but to work for the merchants in town.

They had no work to do as it was an era of modernization. Earlier they could work on their plots and give a living to the whole family. But now the peasants and artisans had to look for alternative sources for earning rather than the common land for survival.

**Q. 13. What was the significance of using 'historical figures' and the numerous Indian Gods on the product? Explain.**

**Answer:** The significance of using historical figures and goddess on the product for advertisement:

As the gods are considered divine, putting their images made the product, a good of divinity.

Also when the British manufacturers used these images, it gave the Indians an approval of familiarity, so the Indians were lured easily towards the product. Putting historical figures appealed to Indian consumers and buyers.

**Q. 14. Explain giving four reasons why the industrialist of Europe preferred hand labour over machines during the 19th century.**

**Answer:** Reasons why industrialist preferred hand labour rather than machines and heavy equipment:

- The labour was available in large quantities thus it was cheap.
- The labour or the handwork was cheaper than the costly machines.
- The costly machines had huge investments which were not affordable by the industrialists, and they were more comfortable with hand labour.
- Machines had huge maintaining costs, and if they ever broke, it was tough or nearly impossible to repair them.
- Seasonal labour was used at certain times of the year as the machines could not be bought only for a seasonal purpose.

**Q. 15. The Indian Cotton export market collapsed, and the local market shrank at the beginning of the 19th century. Why?**

**Answer:** The British cloth was very cheap. The Indian cloth was expensive as it was a hand-made and little bit uncomfortable at that time.

There was an increase in the number of mills in Britain as a result of which huge quantities of cloth were produced at a very large scale.

In comparison to India Britain was producing on a very large scale. When the American civil war broke, there was pressure on India for all the imports in England.

As a result, a huge amount of loan was taken, and the debt increased as cotton was bought at an exorbitant price, after the war, the imports again came from America thus Indian producers had so much debt that couldn't be repaid thus it declined on a very large scale.

**Q. 16. How rapid was the process of industrialisation in England in the 19th century? Explain different phases of industrialisation.**

**Answer:** The process of industrialization was not very rapid; it almost took a whole century for all these changes to occur.

The most important industries of Britain were metal and cotton; they helped the country in expanding their production.

Small inventions and other inventions like the spinning jenny, the steam engine and the handloom helped in the production of cotton.

There was no growth in the industries, but there was industrialization. The quality suffered a lot of all the products.

The various phases were:

- The first phase was the division of labour in which the production was divided so that the company sustains itself.
- The second phase was increasing the scale of production so that a large number of goods are produced. Also known as proto-industrialisation.
- The third phase of industrialization led to increased productivity and efficiency which is a result of the first two-phases.

**Q. 17. Explain the role of Indian merchant and bankers in the network of export trade.**

**Answer:** The Indian bankers were involved in providing with the financial needs.

These bankers helped in banking money, transferring necessary funds and financing all the traders.

The traders in India helped in shipping consignments and helping the consumers and buyers with the supplies that were needed.

The merchants traded from Bombay, Calcutta and Madras to the Fertile Crescent, the Middle East and the neighbouring countries of the Indian subcontinent. After this, the businessmen had large amounts of which helped in expanding the business.

**Q. 18. Why did the Indian trade network break down in the 1750s? Explain any three reasons.**

**Answer:** • Weavers gave their whole time to weaving thus accepted the fixed price of the market.

- The appointment of Gomasthas led to the decline as they were the ones who took the place of the brokers and the middlemen which led to direct contact which was even worse as it led to high corruption and exorbitant tax. The brokers went bankrupt.

- The system of loans and advances led to the Indians weavers taking more loans which led to the accumulation of tax and debt at a huge rate. These debts could never be repaid and ultimately led to all the producers getting caught in a debt cycle.

- There were reports of fights and problems between the weavers and the Gomasthas, and the weavers left their villages, thus deserting them.

## 7. Print Culture and The Modern World

### Check Point 01

#### 1. Question

How were books in China printed in its earlier days?

#### Answer

The earliest kind of print was done in China in 594 AD. The printing was done by pressing the inked woodblock on the paper, and as the paper of that time could not be printed on both sides so, the craftsmen did a peculiar thing; they folded the paper on one side and then printed on both the sides, these were the Accordion books. The printing was sponsored by the imperial state.

#### 2. Question

Which factors caused the diversification of the printing system in China?

#### Answer

Many factors played a huge role in diversifying the print system;

- The civil services examination was taken by the state, and the print was done for the examination. Also, the books for the same were printed and sponsored by the state.
- As the candidates increased so did the volume of print, and it led to a boom in printing.
- The culture of reading spread among merchants, officials and it became an activity which people did in their leisure time.
- The printed material was also imported, and rich women also started to read.

#### 3. Question

Who introduced the hand printing technology in Japan?

#### Answer

The Buddhist missionaries of China were the ones who introduced hand printing in Japan. Handprinting meant that using blocks and other material with the help of hand. It was introduced during the time span of AD 776-780. The first printed book of Japan was printed in AD 868 and was known as Diamond Sutra.

#### **4. Question**

Name the person who invented movable type printing in Europe.

#### **Answer**

Johannes Gutenberg who was born in Mainz in Germany. He was the one who invented the first movable type printing in Europe. He and his father were a goldsmith, so they were aware of how to cut punches for making moulds. Thus, he used the same technique in the press that he invented.

### **Check Point 02**

#### **1. Question**

What was the change brought about by the innovation of printing culture?

#### **Answer**

Numerous changes were brought by the different innovations of print culture. People started becoming aware of everything and every issue around them. It led to widespread reading. Because of the printing press, people started using books on a large scale, and printed books became very cheap. Calligraphists lost their job. People began to be aware of the government and its deeds.

#### **2. Question**

Name some important thinkers of Europe?

#### **Answer**

There were many thinkers of Europe who wrote their thoughts and affected and changed the mentality of people in the 18<sup>th</sup> century Europe, Thomas Paine, Jean Jacques Rousseau

And Voltaire was the important thinkers of Europe and also Albert Einstein.

#### **3. Question**

Who is the author of Ninety Five Theses?

#### **Answer**

In the year of 1517, Martin Luther wrote the novel The Ninety Five These. He wrote it against the contemporary practice of the church with respect to indulgences. He was a social activist and Baptist minister who played a key role in the American civil rights movement from the mid-1950s until his assassination in 1968.

#### **4. Question**

What is 'Chapbook'?



## **Answer**

It is a popular literature book, which is small in size. It was used earlier by people in the middle ages of Europe. It is a small pamphlet type book which contains, poems, stories and ballads. It was carried by petty peddlers and sold by them in the city. It was also known as 'penny chapbook' as it was sold for a penny.

## **Check Point 03**

### **1. Question**

What was the nature of the manuscripts in India?

## **Answer**

Manuscripts in India had a very rich tradition, and it was written in Arabic, Persian and Sanskrit. It was copied on Palm Leaves or handmade paper. It was beautifully illustrated by artists and written in beautiful handwriting by scribes after this it was pressed between two wooden covers or sealed at the end of one side.

### **2. Question**

In which year did the first Malayalam book print?

## **Answer**

Jesuit priests learnt Konkani and Kannada languages and then printed the first Malayalam book in 1713. The first printing press was introduced by Portuguese missionaries in the 16<sup>th</sup> century in Goa.

### **3. Question**

Where was the children's press set up and when?

## **Answer**

Children's press was set in the year 1857 in France. It published old and new fairy tales, folk tales and other material that kids liked to read.

### **4. Question**

Who was the editor of English weekly magazine 'Bengal Gazette'?

## **Answer**

James Augustus Hickey was the author of Bengal Gazette. He was a British officer who was against the people of his own country for the idea of ruling India and torturing Indians.

## **Check Point 04**

### **1. Question**

Why did conservative Hindu and Muslim not allow their girls to study?

#### **Answer**

Conservative Hindu and Muslim did not allow their girls to study because they thought that allowing all the girls to study can corrupt their mind, change their thoughts and mindsets. They thought that educating women would turn them rebellious and would start questioning their role in the society. Hindus thought that educated women would break traditional practices and Muslims thought they would get swayed away by reading Urdu romances.

### **2. Question**

On which law, the Vernacular Press Act of 1878 was based?

#### **Answer**

The Vernacular Press Act of 1878 was based on the Irish Law which gave the government the power to censor the reports of the press if they found it disturbing or against themselves (the government).

### **3. Question**

Name the Governor-General who agreed to revise press laws.

#### **Answer**

The Calcutta supreme court passed some regulations to control the press and what it. In 1835 many publications started protesting for their demand regarding the revision of the press and then Governor – General Bentinck agreed to revise the press Laws.

### **4. Question**

Who is the author of the autobiography by 'Amar Jiban'?

#### **Answer**

Rashundari Devi learnt and read secretly in her kitchen. She faced many problems and was suppressed by her family and in-Laws. But she fought and was determined to learn and later wrote a book Amar Jiban.

### **Self Assessment**

#### **1. Question**

What do you mean by woodblock in the context of print technology?

#### **Answer**

Woodblocks were made by cutting out different shapes from wooden blocks. These blocks and shapes were dipped in ink, and then were pressed against a paper to print the required design and syllable. This kind of print was done in China in 594 AD. The craftsmen did a peculiar thing - they folded the paper on one side and then printed on both the sides. These were the Accordion books. The printing was sponsored by the imperial state.

## **2. Question**

What is the name of the oldest printed book in Japan?

### **Answer**

The first printed book of Japan was printed in AD 868. It was also known as Diamond Sutra. The Buddhist missionaries of China were the one who introduced hand printing in Japan. Hand-printing meant using blocks and other material with the help of hand. It was introduced during the time span of AD 776-780.

## **3. Question**

Who brought the printing press in India and where?

### **Answer**

The first printing press came to India in Goa with the Portuguese. By the end of the 17<sup>th</sup> century,, the Jesuit priest learnt Konkani and Kanara Language and wrote books in these languages.

## **4. Question**

Who was Menocchio?

### **Answer**

Menocchio was a miller in Italy. He read many books that were available in his locality. After reading these books, he wrote his notion in his reinterpretation which enraged all the priests and the Church.

## **5. Question**

What was the role of cartoons and caricatures in the French Revolution?

### **Answer**

The cartoons and caricatures in the newspaper were spread on a large scale, and ,they formed and changed the opinions of the people who read the printed material. Cartoons and caricatures were spread on a large scale. It spread a message that the government was interested in sensual pleasures and desires.

## **6. Question**

Name the religion reformer who was responsible for the Protestant Reformation.

**Answer**

In the year of 1517, Martin Luther wrote the novel The Ninety Five Theses. He wrote it against the contemporary practice of the church with respect to indulgences. He was a social activist and Baptist minister who was responsible for the Protestant Reformation and played a key role in the American civil rights movement from the mid-1950s until his assassination in 1968.

**7. Question**

Why was a cheap paperback edition of the book printed after the Great Depression?

**Answer**

After the Great Depression people went without work and had no money. To popularize the printed books and make it sustainable in the market, the Cheap paperback was used, so that people could afford and buy these books for themselves.

**8. Question**

When was the Vernacular Press Act passed and why?

**Answer**

The Vernacular Press Act of 1878 was based on the Irish Law which gave the government the power to censor the reports of the press if they found it disturbing or against themselves (the government).

**9. Question**

Describe in brief how the print revolution affected the lifestyle of people.

**Answer**

Print revolution affected the lifestyle of people in many ways:

- Because of print revolution, books could reach a wider population and were easily available.
- Many people who disagreed with the established authority, and were not able to express their thoughts, could now easily publish what they felt.
- What many thinkers wrote was now available to a wider population, so the thought process and opinions of many people changed.
- Novels created an interest in women's lives and their thoughts and aspirations.

- Reading became common, as a result, literacy rates of the population increased. Books were printed for primary schools, service exams and other institutions. A children's press was established in France in 1857 which published folk tales, fairy tales and other fables for children.

## **10. Question**

Who was Johannes Gutenberg?

### **Answer**

Johannes Gutenberg who was born in Mainz in Germany was the one who invented the first movable type printing in Europe. He and his father were goldsmiths, so they were aware of how to cut punches for making moulds thus he used the same technique in the press that he invented.

## **11. Question**

'Access to book created a new culture of reading'. Support the statement by giving three examples.

### **Answer**

- Because of print, now books could reach a wider population and were easily available.
- Many people who disagreed with the established authority, and were not able to express their thoughts, they could now easily publish what they wrote.
- What many thinkers wrote was now available to a wider population so, the thought process and opinions of many people changed.
- Novels created an interest in women lives and their thoughts and aspirations, in fact, they created an interest in their own lives.
- Access to books led to an increase in the literacy rates of many parts of Europe, and books began to be printed on a large scale.
- There was experimentation with the different themes of the books and the genres. Books started to cover themes like poetry, romance, war, women and even spiritual thoughts.
- Novels were printed, and even stories for children were printed which included folk tales, fairy tales and even moral stories.
- A children's press was established in France in 1857 which performed the function of printing for children.

## **12. Question**

Describe the progress of print in Japan?

## Answer

Print in Japan was introduced by Buddhist missionaries in 768-780 AD. These Buddhist missionaries influenced the Japanese print culture on a large scale .

The Buddhist missionaries wrote a book called THE DIAMOND SUTRA. It was the first book to be written and printed in Japan in 868 AD .

Books were printed on such a large scale that libraries and bookstores in Tokyo were flocked with printed books and written material .

Tokyo had the largest reading population and the literacy rates increased there .

Books started to be written on topics like Musical , tea ceremony , calculations , proper etiquettes , cooking , flower arrangement and on famous places .

## 13. Question

How and why did woodblock printing become popular?

## Answer

Woodblocks were made by cutting out different shapes from wooden blocks. These blocks and shapes were dipped in ink and then were pressed against a paper to print the required design and syllable. This kind of print was done in China in 594 AD. The craftsmen did a peculiar thing - they folded the paper on one side and then printed on both the sides. These were the Accordion books. The printing was sponsored by the imperial state. It became popular due to the full reasons:


1. The demand for books could not be met by handwritten manuscripts.
2. Circulation of manuscripts was difficult as they were difficult to handle and fragile.
3. Due to the demand for books, woodblock printing became cheaper.

## 14. Question


How did 'print' opened the possibility of thinking differently?

## Answer


What many thinkers wrote was now available to a wider population so, the thought process and opinions of many people changed. All this affected the thought and thinking process of the population at large.



The dimension of thinking of many people widened, they started thinking differently because they were exposed to a large number of ideas and information.



Women started to express their thoughts and opinions because of the exposure to print and the awareness. Even after so many restrictions and taboos some rebel women fought and read what they wanted to.



There is story of a north Indian girl who was not allowed to read and was told to read only Arabic quran , but she learnt the language she wanted and later wrote a book. Then there is an example of a women named Rashsundari Devi who learnt and read secretly in her kitchen and later wrote a book Amar Jiban .

### 15. Question

Which new strategies were opted by the printers and publishers to sell their products?

**Answer**

The publishers and printers started publishing new series , genres and even explored new themes , this gave people the interest and excitement to buy the books and read them . One of the serialised novel was: The shilling series .

To make the books more popular the publishers started The shilling series in England in the 1920's which was known to be so cheap that people from all walks of life could buy them.

The publishers started to advertise about the books so that they could attract a large section of the audience . The greatest innovation was the cheap book back covers during the great depression in the 1930's so that the people could afford it and don't have to compromise with their reading .

The publishers and printers started advertising about the books on the building , the railways , the streets and other public locations .

## 16. Question

Explain how print culture affected women in the 19<sup>th</sup> century in India.

## Answer

The print culture that surfaced the world on a large scale affected the population in a very large scale . Because of print , now books could reach a wider population and were easily available to everyone .

What many thinkers wrote was now available to a wider population so , the thought process and opinions of many people changed . Novels created an interest in women lives and their thoughts and aspirations , in fact they created an interest in their own lives .

Women started to express their thoughts and opinions because of the exposure to print and the awareness . Even after so many restrictions and taboos some rebel women fought and read what they wanted to .

The hindu's thought that a literate girl would be widowed and Muslims feared that mind of women would be corrupted by reading urdu romances . Even after so many restrictions and taboos some rebel women fought and read what they wanted to .

There is story of a north Indian girl who was not allowed to read and was told to read only Arabic quran , but she learnt the language she wanted and later wrote a book. Then there is an example of a women named Rashsundari Devi who learnt and read secretly in her kitchen and later wrote a book Amar Jiban .



## **17. Question**

How did a new reading culture bloom in China?

### **Answer**

1. The earliest kind of print was introduced in China in 594 AD.
2. The printing was done by pressing the inked woodblock on the paper, and as the paper of that time could not be printed on both sides so, the craftsmen did a peculiar thing they folded the paper on one side and then printed on both the sides, these were the Accordion books.
3. The printing was sponsored by the imperial state in China.
4. The Civil Services Examination was conducted by the state, and the print was done for the examination also the books for the same were printed and sponsored by the state.
5. As the candidates increased so did the volume of print, and it led to a boom in printing.
6. The culture of reading spread among merchants, officials and it became an activity which people did in their leisure time.
7. The printed material was also imported, and rich women also started to read.
8. By the seventeenth century, not only the officials but the merchants also used the print technology in their lives for their professional and other needs.
9. Women who were rich also started reading books and started printing and publishing their own books. Many scholar official's wives were involved in doing this work.
10. The print was now not just a leisure activity.

## **18. Question**

Trace the History of print revolution in India.

### **Answer**

The first printing press came in India in Goa with the Portuguese missionaries as they ruled there and still have some affect to this date . By the end of the 17th Century the Jesuit priest learnt Konkani and kanara Language and wrote books with these languages

Jesuit priests learnt Konkani and kanara languages and then printed the First Malayalam book in 1713.

A British officer who was against the people of his own country for the idea of ruling India and torturing Indians was the Author of Bengal Gazette . His name was James Augustus Hickey.

In the 17th century , Dutch missionaries belonging to Protestant sect of Christianity, printed 32 texts in Tamil which were all older works .

### 19. Question

In what way did print culture affect the reformers? Explain with examples.

#### Answer

1. At the end of the 20<sup>th</sup> century (1920) many newspapers were published apart from James Augustus Hickey's Bengal Gazette.
2. These newspapers contained articles of many nationalist leaders who moved and inspired the population of India.
3. All the diverse communities of India got connected through the print media, thus the print carried people and their identity from one place to another creating pan-Indian identities.
4. The views of reformers like Gangadhar Tilak and Raja Ram Mohan Roy were now read by public.
5. The newspapers highlighted the misrule and the cruelties of the British rule.
6. The newspaper wrote in different languages so people from all the regions in India could understand. This led to the awareness regarding the British Rule, and resulted in widespread movement in India in 1857.

### 20. Question

Explain the role of women writer in designing the structure of the subsequent society of the contemporary period.

**Answer**

- The print culture that surfaced in the world affected the population on a very large scale. The women writers helped in making big changes in the contemporary period of India.
- Because of print, now books could reach a wider population and were easily available to everyone. Many women started writing their thoughts.
- Women started to express their thoughts and opinions because of the exposure to print and awareness. Even after so many restrictions and taboos some rebel women fought and read what they wanted to.
- Even after a lot of restrictions and taboos, some rebel women fought and read what they wanted to read.
- There is a story of a North-Indian girl who was forbidden by her family to read. She was only allowed to read in Arabic-Quran as a result of which she read secretly. She also wrote a book which was published by herself. Astonishingly it was found that the language she wrote was not what her family permitted, but she wrote in the language she was interested in.
- Then there is the story of a woman named Rashsundari Devi who was brutally suppressed by her family. She was never allowed to read and write, so she secretly read in her and later wrote a book AMAR JIBAN and published it.

Thus, these great women by letting their thoughts out got involved in changing society and affecting it by giving their contribution.

**21. Question**

In what way the print culture promoted social values?

**Answer**

1. Print culture promoted many social values; it inculcated values like reading.
2. It also allowed people to widen their thinking and their minds to liberate.
3. Their thinking was rationalised, and they got involved in reasoning.
4. As information flooded the minds of people, they started putting forward their opinions which led to discussions and debates.
5. People thought differently after reading books and different ideas of other humans.

6. The print culture promoted democracy, libertarianism and a society which involved in free speech.

# Geography

<b>Chapter Name</b>	<b>Pg.No.</b>
<b>Resources and Development</b>	<b>62</b>
<b>Water Resources</b>	<b>75</b>
<b>Agriculture</b>	<b>82</b>
<b>Minerals &amp; Energy Resources</b>	<b>95</b>
<b>Manufacturing Industries</b>	<b>112</b>
<b>Lifelines of National Economy</b>	<b>123</b>

# Resources and Development

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. In which category of resources would metals be classified?**

**Answer:** Metals are important resources. They are categorized under elements. Metals are good conductors of electricity and heat. Metals are made of non-renewable elements and are found naturally in the earth's crust. Metals can also be recycled to eliminate its need for non-renewable resources.

**Q. 2. Under what conditions do you think resources can become developed resources?**

**Answer:** Developed resources are those resources which are suitable for utilisation after a careful survey of their quantity and quality. The conditions under which resources can become developed are that they need to have the technology to utilize the resources to their full potential. Sufficient manpower, economy and sufficient knowledge of limitations and availability of the resource is required to develop them.

**Q. 3. Give an example of a non-renewable resource that is non- recyclable also.**

**Answer:** A non-renewable resource is a finite resource. It cannot renew itself completely, making it a valuable and limited in quantity. An example of a renewable resource is coal. Coal is a fossil fuel which is derived from the remains of plants and animals that lie buried in the earth. It takes billions of years to form naturally, so it is considered to be a non-renewable resource.

**Q. 4. Name two states that are backward in spite of having rich mineral deposits.**

**Answer:** The two states that have rich mineral deposits are Jharkhand and Orissa. These states are backward in spite of rich mineral deposits because of the required technology, economy and facilities for development lack in these areas. There is a lack of quality support and human resources in the utilization of the resources. The factors which contribute to the lack of development is the unstable government in the case of Jharkhand. There have been frequent changes in the government due to fewer chief ministers, their short reigns and the failure of political parties in achieving majority vote from the people contribute to the formation of an unstable government. Thus, there is no progress.

**Q. 5. What was Gandhiji's concern about resources conservation?**

**Answer:** Gandhiji voiced his opinions about the utilization of natural resources. He placed importance on simple living, that is, utilising resources to fulfil needs, not greed. His motive was to lift poverty from villages by introducing manual labour in the production of village economy and check unlimited consumption and exploitation of

natural resources. He stated that renewable resources should be utilized and their usage should be minimized to complete the natural cycle of regeneration and maintain permanence of our survival. His non-violent principles are evident in his methods to preserve natural resources as he believed that violence in the destruction and wastage of natural resources would disrupt the harmony of nature and hinder growth and progress.

## **Check Point 02**

### **Q. 1. What percentage of land in India is put for agriculture uses?**

**Answer:** Agricultural lands in India was estimated to be 60.45% in 2015. Agriculture is the principal means of income in India. The agricultural lands refer to the lands that are suitable for cultivation, that is arable land. Arable lands are those lands on which temporary crops are sown and cultivated. It includes meadows, gardens and fallowed land. Permanent crops are grown on lands for longer periods of time and do not need to re-cultivated after harvesting. This includes lands on which flowers, shrubs and trees with edible food products. The areas of land which are excluded from arable lands are those lands abandoned due to shifting cultivation and slash and burn cultivation and the lands on which trees grow naturally, or woods.

### **Q. 2. Name two states where land degradation is caused by overgrazing.**

**Answer:** Overgrazing refers to the excessive grazing of farm animals like cattle, sheep, horses and goats. Overgrazing is a major cause of land degradation because animals tear up roots along with the shoots and leaves of grasses on fertile pastures and leave the land barren and prone to erosion by wind and water. Two states in India which are affected by overgrazing are Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh.

### **Q. 3. What does the Net Sown Area represent?**

**Answer:** Net Sown Area represents the total area of land sown once or twice in a year. The land is estimated by the sowing of crops in a year. The plains of Haryana in India have more percentage of the net sown area. This is calculated to keep track of the number of crops sown in a particular piece of land and form an estimate of the progress of agriculture and the overall economy of the country.

### **Q. 4. What are wastelands?**

**Answer:** Wastelands refer to areas of land which are unused, empty, barren and unfit for cultivation and building. It is the result of neglect, excessive cultivation and sowing of crops over long periods of time with lesser time to retain its fertility. It can also occur due to use of harmful fertilizers and chemicals which increase acidic content of the soil, killing the micro-organisms which aid in its fertility, soil erosion which is caused by loss of fertile top soil by wind and water, deforestation etc.

### **Q. 5. What should be the area under forest cover to maintain ecological balance?**

**Answer:** Ecological balance refers to the balance of ecosystems which is maintained by the abundance of forest cover, vegetation, wetlands, rivers and streams and the harmony between the living organisms such as humans, plants and animals and their environment and ensuring their survival. This balance is maintained by natural phenomena such as photosynthesis which ensures that all organisms are coexisting. Humans must understand their role in maintaining the ecological balance by practicing sustained development, protecting the environment from pollution and degradation due to their activities which hinder the natural balance. The percentage of forest cover which maintains ecological balance is 33%.

### **Check Point 03**

#### **Q. 1. Which is the most widespread soil in India?**

**Answer:** Among the soils of India, alluvial soil is the most widely spread soil. This is due to its natural fertility and abundance in the river valleys and plains which constitute a major part of arable land in India. This soil contains adequate amounts of humus, potash, lime and phosphoric acid which is suitable for cultivation and bountiful harvests. It supports the growth of a wide variety of crops like sugarcane, rice, pulses etc. which are the basic foods of Indians.

#### **Q. 2. Which soil is found in Deccan plateau?**

**Answer:** Black soil or regur soil is found in the Deccan Plateau in India. It is a soil formed by the flow of lava. These soils have a rich black colour due to the abundance of lime, iron, magnesium, aluminium, and potassium. It has a clayey texture which is likely influenced by the climate. It has a high water retaining capacity, swells to become sticky due to monsoons and develops cracks when it is dry.

#### **Q. 3. What restricts the infiltration of water in desert soil?**

**Answer:** Arid or desert soils are found in deserts. These soils are formed by wind activities and are sandy in nature. It lacks moisture and humus due to the dry climate and high temperature which causes rapid evaporation. It is infertile and saline due to lack of rainfall. Due to the high quantity of calcium carbonates and sodium, kankar is formed and restricts infiltration of water in the soil.

#### **Q. 4. Name a method that can prevent soil erosion in non-slope areas or plains?**

**Answer:** A method by which soil erosion can be prevented in non-slope areas is cover cropping. This process involves planting crops like corn, cereal, and oats to protect the fertile top soil from being washed or blown away by rainfall and winds. This method can be done between periods of harvesting and re-sowing of principal crops to aid income, reduce the loss of arable land and barrenness. It also enables the farmer to remove excess weeds. It also enables nitrogen fixing, improving quality and texture of the soil.

### **Self Assessment**



**Q. 1. Write down different methods of checking soil erosion.**

**Answer:** Different methods to check soil erosion are:

**(i) Control overgrazing by livestock-** Cattle, sheep, goats and other livestock tear up roots from the soil and ruining the texture and leave the land barren and exposed to wind and rain.

**(ii) Mixed Cropping-** it involves growing a variety of crops, mixed together. It is sown in rows or in regular intervals to prevent the soil from erosion.

**(iii) Plant trees-** Planting trees help to break wind and guard the soil against erosion. It also binds the soil with its deep roots and regulates the climate of a place by bringing sufficient rainfall.

**(iv) Terracing-** Terraces are built on steep slopes to control soil erosion. It levels the soil and supports are built to prevent landslides. It requires skill and hard labour to build it.

**(v) Ploughing of Contours-** It involves ploughing the land along the contour line to protects the soil from surface run-off by water.

**Q. 2. Overgrazing may cause land degradation. Give examples of some states affected by this.**

**Answer:** Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh are some states affected by over-grazing. These states are growing fast in terms of agriculture and industry, and energy. Land degradation, however, is a major hindrance on the road to progress in these states. This is due to the large growth of population, rapid urban growth which has placed stress on the fertile lands, following intensive agricultural practices, heavy use of fertilizers, overgrazing, deforestation, etc. Overgrazing is a major cause of land degradation due to loss of protective cover of crops, grass and other plants by livestock, to aid in income and industry.

**Q. 3. Differentiate current fallow land from another fallow land.**

**Answer:**

<b>Current Fallow Land</b>	<b>Other Fallow Land</b>
(i) It is left fallow for a period of one year.	(i) It is left fallow for a period of one to five years.
(ii) It is done is to cultivate permanent crops.	(ii) It is done to cultivate temporary crops.

**Q. 4. What is the comparative change in barren and waste land pattern in India between 1960-61 and 2008-09?**

**Answer:** Barren and wasteland in India decreased by 12.01% to 8.61% between 1960-61 and 2008-09. This was caused due to massive efforts by the government of India. They have introduced new farming techniques and irrigation like the introduction of HIR seeds, use of tractors and ploughing machines to harvest crops and other such technologies to increase the rate of income of farmers. Other methods include the use of wastelands for agricultural activities to increase net sown areas, the uncertainty of current fallow techniques which depend on rainfall and sowing of regular crops, encroachment of rural and urban settlements which place undue pressure on wastelands.

**Q. 5. Differentiate Net sown Area from cultivable land?**

**Answer:**

<b>Net Sown Area</b>	<b>Cultivable Land</b>
(i) It refers to the total areas of land which are sown with crops and vegetation.	(i) It consists of net sown area, fallow lands, and cultivable wastelands.
(ii) It calculates the total area of crops sown in a year.	(ii) It is an estimate of areas which are suitable for cultivation.
(iii) Approximately 141 million hectares is the net sown area.	(iii) The area of cultivable land is subject to change and is shrinking in recent years due to the building of industries, roads etc.

**Q. 6. Distinguish between khadar and Bangar soils.**

**Answer:**

<b>Khadar</b>	<b>Bhangar</b>
(i) It consists of newer deposits of alluvial soil. The soil is renewed every year.	(i) Consists of older deposits of alluvial soil. Alluvium deposits are frequent without renewal.
(ii) It is found on the flood plains, near the bottom of the valleys.	(ii) It is found in large parts of Northern plains near 30 metres above sea level.
(ii) More fertile in nature, finer in texture	(iii) Less fertile in nature, coarse in texture
(iv) It is known as dhaya in Punjab.	(iv) It is known as a bet in Punjab.

**Q. 7. How is red soil different from laterite soil?**

**Answer:**

<b>Red Soil</b>	<b>Laterite Soil</b>
(i) The rocks that lead to the formation of red soil are granites, gneisses and quartzite.	(i) They are formed by weathering of rocks.
(ii) Rich in potash and potassium.	(ii) Rich in ferric oxides
(iii) It is found in Madhya Pradesh, Chota Nagpur Plateau, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh and others.	(iii) It is found on summits of Eastern and the Western Ghats, Malwa Plateau, Vindhyan Ranges, Maharashtra, and parts of Karnataka.
(iv) It is suitable for growing wheat, rice, pulses, tobacco with the proper use of fertilizers and irrigation.	(iv) It is suitable for growing tea, coffee, coconut, rubber with manure and proper irrigation.

**Q. 8. State the different causes of soil erosion pertaining to the following region and suggest remedial measures for the same.**

**(a) Mountainous regions**

**(b) Steep slopes and plateaus**

**(c) Coastal areas**

**(d) Desert areas**

**(e) River plains**

**Answer: (a) mountainous regions**

**Cause:** Lack of trees lead to loosening of soil which gets washed away due to rainfall and wind

**Remedy:** Afforestation

**(b) Steep slopes and plateaus**

**Cause:** Lack of trees lead to loosening of soil which gets washed away due to rainfall and wind

**Remedy:** Afforestation

**(c) Coastal areas**

**Cause:** caused by hydraulic action, abrasion, impact and corrosion by wind, water, and other forces, natural or unnatural.

**Remedy:** Reduce human interference

**(d) Desert areas**

**Cause:** Desert areas are largely affected by winds as there is little vegetation to hold the soil.

**Remedy:** Change land-use pattern and reduce overgrazing and conversion into agricultural lands.

**(e) River plains**

**Causes:** Pollution of river bodies, encroachment of river banks

**Remedy:** Prevent urbanisation very close to river bodies, prevent dumping of wastes into the river bodies.

**Q. 9. Why is it important to have a planned strategy for the developing of resources in India?**

**Answer:** It is important to have a planned strategy for the development of resources because, in a country like India, there is a vast population and uneven distribution of resources. To make good use to the available resources, there must be good planning, by keeping in mind the technology, skills and economy required to resolve the problems of lack and enhance all areas of development. In India, therefore, its first Five Year Plan essentially includes Resource Planning. Through resource planning, the wastage caused over-consumption of resources, followed by our socio-economic problems can be prevented by the conservation of resources. Leaders like Gandhiji believed that modern technology caused massive exploitation and extinction of resources.

**Q. 10. "Indiscriminate used of resources has led to numerous problems". Justify the statements in three points.**

**Answer:** The statement is justified because:

**(i)** Exploitation of resources by greedy and powerful people lead to a massive depletion of resource and deprives the weak and future generation.

**(ii)** There is an unequal distribution of resources in every state, leading to excessive development in some areas and severe lack in others. Even the society has been divided on the basis of economy and facilities available.

**(iii)** Unplanned and unchecked use of resources has also resulted in problems which are shared by all the countries of the world. This includes environmental degradation, global warming, pollution, depletion of the ozone layer, etc.

**Q. 11. Explain how deforestation is responsible for land degradation and soil erosion.**

**Answer:** Deforestation occurs when there is excessive felling of trees and to clearing large forests for agricultural practices and building settlements and industries or mining for valuable minerals in the earth's crust. This leads to soil erosion and land degradation because deforestation leaves the soil bare and prone to erosion by wind and water, and

the fertility of the soil is also lost due to human activities. Also, the lack of trees to regulate the rainfall and the overall climate of a region results in desertification because there is no physical barrier against loss of top soil which aids in healthy growth of crops and vegetation for survival.

**Q. 12. Discuss the importance of soil for human beings.**

**Answer:** Soil is a valuable natural resource because it gives life to this planet. Since food is one of the basic needs for survival, fertile soil provides good crops for human consumption, stores water and filters it for the growth of vegetation and crops. Humans also use soil to build houses and towns, store waste, get fuel and energy for daily needs, and make clothing and extract water for daily consumption and growth of various industries. The progress of a country depends on soil, and it is also the home to various ecosystems which maintains the ecological balance of the world. It helps regulate the overall temperature and climate by the growth of trees and vegetation and maintains biodiversity.

**Q. 13. Why did the colonial government never try to conserve resources?**

**Answer:** The colonial government never tried to conserve resources because they were utilising them on a massive scale to aid in their growth and progress of industries and trade. Trade was the means by which the British government gained control of India and in order to meet the growing demands of trade and commerce, and increase imperial power, the colonial government exploited various natural resources of India including felling of trees for building ships to boost trade, clearing forests to build railroads for communication and transportation of goods, supplies, ammunition and soldiers across the country.

**Q. 14. Mentions any four characteristics of forest soils.**

**Answer:** Forest soils are found in mountainous regions where there is an abundance of forests. Frequent rains have made this soil very fertile and rich with humus. The nature and texture of the forest soils vary due to climate. Some other characteristics are:

- (i) Some soils are dry, sandy, and unstable due to winds on the plains of the Indus valley.
- (ii) Soils in the Northern and Central Zones of India are alluvial in nature, and some are red soils. Other types include laterite and black soils which are prevalent in Maharashtra and Orissa.
- (iii) In the Southern regions, the soils have originated due to various geological phenomena like weathering of rocks etc. The soil is dry and shallow. Black cotton soil is also available in some areas.
- (iv) In the Eastern regions, laterite soils are common. Other types include red, alluvium, and clay. The soils are fertile because there is an abundance of fallen leaves which add

to the cycling of nutrients. The rocks from which these soils originated from are crystalline, metamorphic.

**Q. 15. Write a short note on the following topics.**

**(a) Terrace farming**

**(b) Shelter belts**

**(c) Forest or mountainous soils**

**Answer: (a) Terrace farming**

Terraces are built on steep slopes to control soil erosion. It levels the soil and supports are built to prevent landslides. It requires skill and hard labour to build it.

**(b) Shelter belts**

Shelter belts are rows of trees, usually along fence lines. Where there is a lot of cultivated land, shelter belts reduce wind erosion. They reduce wind speed and provide sheltered areas on the leeward (the side away from the wind) and windward (the side toward the wind) sides of the shelterbelt.

**(c) Forest or mountainous soils**

It covers 8% of India's total geographic area. They are loamy and silty and lack humus. They are useful for cultivating tea, spices, coffee and fruits. It is found in lower parts of valleys and hilly regions of J&K, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, etc.

**Q. 16. How does land get degraded due to human activities?**

**Answer:** Land degradation is a major problem that the environment is facing in modern times. Human activities are the major factors for degradation due to:

**(i) Over-Grazing:** Over-grazing involves the grazing of livestock like cattle, sheep, etc., over large areas of grassland and pastures. The large herds contribute to over-grazing because when they eat the grass or other shoots, they rip out the roots, leaving the land barren and infertile.

**(ii) Shifting cultivation:** It is a process of agriculture in which some areas of land are cleared for cultivation and then abandoned to retain its fertility by natural means. This practice leaves various lands unfertile and barren due to over-farming, or the excess growth of weeds.

**(iii) Jhumming:** Jhum cultivation is the name given to slash and burn method of cultivation in India. It is practiced by tribes and involves clearing up a piece of land by burning of vegetation, cutting of trees in forests to cultivate crops. After a few years of cultivation, the land is left unfertile and severe erosion occurs on the barren land.

**(iv) Deforestation:** This involves cutting trees on a massive scale to clear lands for building houses, agriculture and other human activities. It causes major land degradation because such lands become deserts due to infertility, erosion of essential soils, the extinction of some animal species etc. Rainfall is also affected drastically.

**Q. 17. Suggest measures to check soil erosion by rivers.**

**Answer:** Soil erosion by rivers can be checked by:

**(i) Planting Trees:** One of the most effective ways to control soil erosion is by planting trees or other vegetation along the shores of rivers. Trees also control the direction of winds, and the roots bind the soil to prevent it from being washed away by water.

**(ii) Building Dams:** Dams or walls can be built to control the direction of the river and prevent surface run-off of soil and prevent flooding of riverbanks and control landslides.

**(iii) Prevent land degradation:** Land degradation should be prevented in order to control soil erosion . It includes afforestation or re-planting of trees after they are cut for timber to bind the soil, contour cropping, preventing excessive grazing etc.

**(iv) Controlled Agriculture:** Practicing agriculture in a controlled way by contour cropping, well planned irrigational methods to prevent washing away of fertile top soil, use of eco-friendly fertilizers to control acidic content of the soil, etc. helps to reduce soil erosion.

**Q. 18. Discuss the basis on which soil is classified in India.**

**Answer:** Soils in India are classified as:

**(i) Alluvial Soil:** This soil is the most common type found in India. It covers about 43% of the land area. It is abundant in northern plains and river valleys, and in the peninsula. It is grey in colour, and the texture is sandy, loamy or clayey. It is highly fertile because it consists of humus, lime and other organic compounds. It is also rich in potash. These soils are mainly transported and deposited by rivers . It consists of two types of soil: Khadar or new alluvium and Bhangar which is old alluvium. The main crops which can be sown are rice, sugarcane, and pulses.

**(ii) Red Soil:** This type of soil is found mostly in areas of low rainfall. It occupies about 3.5 lakh sq. km of land. It is mostly porous, and clayey and its fertility depends on the area. It is red in colour due to iron oxide and is rich in potash and potassium. It is found in parts of Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Chota Nagpur Plateau, West Bengal and Uttar Pradesh. The crops that are sown on red soil are wheat, cotton, potatoes, fruits, and millets.

**(iii) Black Soil:** It is also known as regur soil. It is found in the Deccan Plateau and has a high water-retaining capacity. It is rich in iron, lime, calcium, potassium, aluminium and magnesium. It is clayey in texture and develops cracks when dried. It is best for growing cotton.

**(iv) Laterite Soil:** It is derived from the Latin word “later” which means brick. It is found in areas of high rainfall and temperature. It is red in colour due to the gravel of red sandstones. They are rich in ferric oxides and in higher places there may be a higher content of humus. It is rich in iron and aluminium. Heavy leaching occurs in this type of soil leading to its infertility. After irrigation and adding of manure, this soil is suitable for growth of tea, coffee, rubber and coconut. It also supports the growth of grazing grounds and is useful as a building material.

**(v) Desert Soil:** It is also known as arid soil. This soil occupies 4.32% of the land. It consists of Aeolian sand and clay. This soil is formed by sands blown by the wind which causes desertification of the land. Occurs in Rajasthan, Punjab and Haryana. Sandy, clay less soil occurs in the coastal regions of Orissa, Kerala and Tamil Nadu. It has very minimum organic matter and calcium carbonate and phosphate. Drought tolerant crops like pulses, cotton, barley and maize are grown on desert soil.

**(vi) Forest Soil:** This kind of soil is found in Eastern and Western Ghats. It occurs in places of high rainfall. Humus content is less leading to the acidic nature. It is suitable for tea, coffee and spices.

**(vii) Mountain Soil:** This kind of soil occupies 6.5% of land in India. This soil is mainly found on hill slopes covered by forests. It is found in the valleys of the Himalayan region on the north side. It requires a high amount of fertilizer for good crop yield. It is suitable for wheat, maize and temperate fruits.

**Q. 19. Imagine yourself as one of the heads of states attending the international Earth summits at Rio de Janeiro, Brazil in 1992. Discuss some measures taken by your country to combat environmental damage, poverty and disease.**

**Answer:** From 3<sup>rd</sup> to the 14<sup>th</sup> of June in the year 1992, Rio de Janeiro hosted the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development to discuss the state of the global environment. It concluded with the Earth Summit, and the leaders of 105 nations attended this conference to show their commitment to sustainable development. These nations

**Some measures taken by my country are:**

**(i)** Introduction of agro-industries or farm industries in the rural areas to provide employment to farmers and labourers.

**(ii)** Introduction of HIV seeds, agricultural machinery, eco-friendly fertilizers to boost the agricultural economy and better production.

**s** Spreading awareness of environmental pollution and other issues like health, sanitation, and diseases among rural and urban areas on a massive level, by rallies, movements, programs, etc.



(iv) Building organizations to protect the environment and contribute to the welfare of poverty-stricken areas, the minorities like women children and elderly, providing facilities for healthcare, education and sanitation.

(v) Undertaking steps to protect forests and promote deforestation and reforestation, preserve the wildlife of forests by building national parks and biological reserves.

(vi) Protect marine life and ocean by curbing disposal of wastes from factories, domestic waste, and litter. Taking steps to prevent oils spill from petroleum platforms.

(viii) Marshy Soil: This soil occurs in humid areas with heavy rainfall. It is black in colour and highly acidic. It occurs in Sunderbans of West Bengal, coastal regions of Tamil Nadu, Bihar and Uttrakhand.

**Q. 20. Explain the importance of conservation of resources.**

Answer: Conservation is the process in which the natural resources are cared for and protected from depletion and extinction. Renewable resources like trees and plants, water, and air can be replaced gradually. Non-renewable resources like fossil fuels, minerals and essential oils cannot be replaced as it takes millions of years to form naturally. Conservation of natural resources is necessary because as the years are passing, and the human population has increased rapidly, thereby adding to the demand and consumption of natural resources. This is placing extreme pressure on the resources, which are depleting faster than they are replaced. Through carefully planned methods and sustainable development, we can prolong the availability of natural resources for future generations. Through conservation, we can reduce wastage and maintain the biodiversity of nature and prevent natural cycles and eco-systems from getting disrupted, thus endangering our lives and that of the animal and plant species. We must not forget that animals too depend on natural resources like forests, rivers and seas to thrive. Their survival cannot be compromised in the name of development. **Using resources wisely will also ensure our survival and that of future generations.**

**Q. 21. Describe different idea put forward for Sustainable development.**

**Answer:** Sustainable development is a development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. The different ideas of sustainable development are:

(i) Save electricity by using bulbs that consume less power. Turning off lights and fans and other appliances when it is not in use, using generators that store and preserve electricity, using solar lamps as much as possible etc.

(ii) Switching to conventional sources of energy to save fossil fuels by using solar cookers, lamps, panels, wind mills, hydroelectric power plants, etc. to conserve fossil fuels and generate less pollution.

**(iii)** Practicing eco-tourism, afforestation, and agro-forestry, and developing greener and better methods of irrigation to prevent wastage of water and soil erosion by surface runoff.

**(iv)** Generating less waste by recycling and reusing materials in our daily lives. Consuming less plastic and non-biodegradable materials to reduce waste and filter it before releasing it into the environment.

# Water Resources

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. What percentage of fresh water is stored as ice sheets and glaciers?**

**Answer:** 70%

96.5% of the total volume of the earth consists of water out of which 2.5% is fresh water. Out of the 2.5% of the total freshwater present on the earth, 70% of the fresh water is present in glaciers and ice sheets in Antarctica, Greenland and mountainous regions. Less than 30% is stored as groundwater.

**Q. 2. Why is water availability per person low in India?**

**Answer:** India ranks 133rd in the world in terms of water availability per person per annum. The reason for the low availability of water per person per annum is that India receives nearly 4% of global precipitation which is very less for the dense population in India. Also, the total estimated renewable water resources in India is 1,897 square km per annum.

**Q. 3. According to citizen's Fifth report CSE 1999, which two rivers are far from being pure?**

**Answer:** Ganga and Yamuna

India's rivers have turned into toxic streams due to urbanisation and industrialisation. Also, big rivers of India such as Ganga and Yamuna have been mentioned in the citizen's Fifth report CSE 1999, which said that these rivers are far from being pure.

**Q. 4. Which ruler in ancient India had extensively built dams, lakes and irrigation system?**

**Answer:** Chandragupta Maurya

Water harvesting system was started in the first century B.C to channel the flood water of river Ganga. It was during the reign of Chandragupta Maurya that these water bodies such as dams, lakes and rivers were extensively built.

**Q. 5. What percentage of energy requirement is fulfilled by hydroelectricity in India?**

**Answer:** 22%

Industrialisation in India has led to more demand for water and electricity. Most of the electricity to the industries is supplied by the hydroelectric power. 22% of electricity is produced by the hydroelectric power plants in India today.

## Check Point 02

**Q. 1. Multipurpose project on which river has created an interstate dispute between Karnataka and Tamil Nadu?**

**Answer:** Kaveri river project

More demand, inadequate supply to one region are the main reasons due to which disputes arise between two states, for example, Tamil Nadu and Karnataka. The two states Tamil Nadu and Karnataka have disputes due to the Kaveri river multipurpose project which is based on a historical project.

**Q. 2. What was the cause due to which the Sabarmati basin farmers agitated up to a level of a riot?**

**Answer:** More supply to urban areas

One of the multi-purpose projects was 'dam' which satisfied the needs but also created conflicts due to various requirements of the people with the help of these projects. The Sabarmati-basin farmers had agitated because the water supply was provided to urban areas even at the time of drought.

**Q. 3. What were the traditional systems of rainwater harvesting used in Rajasthan?**

**Answer:** Rooftop harvesting, rain-fed storage structures and tankas.

**Explanation:** Rooftop harvesting was one of the traditional systems commonly followed in Rajasthan where the rainwater falling on the roof would go through a pipe and get collected in a container. The second method was to store the water in the agricultural fields. Tankas were another form of rain harvesting system used in Rajasthan where large tanks also known as tankas were used to store water.

**Q. 4. Where is Gul or Kul water harvesting system practised?**

**Answer:** Western Himalayas

While keeping the ecological condition and their water needs, in the mountainous region, i.e., the western Himalayas there were the diversion channels "kuls" and "guls" built for the agricultural purpose.

**Q. 5. What water conservation method is used in Gendathur village?**

**Answer:** Rooftop harvesting

A village in Mysore (Gendathur) have adopted the rainwater harvesting system in households' rooftop to meet their water needs. It has earned the rare distinction for rainwater harvesting system. Nearly 200 households have adopted this technique.

## **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. What is fresh water? What is its availability on the earth?**

**Answer:** 2.5%

Fresh water is the water that can be used by living beings such as water for drinking, irrigation etc. Three-fourth of the world is covered with water. 2.5 % of the total water available on the earth's surface is fresh water which can be used by living beings.

**Q. 2. Write any one pre-independence hydraulic structure in Delhi?**

**Answer:** Tank at Hauz Khas

To supply water to the Siri Fort area, Iltutmish had constructed a tank in Hauz Khas, Delhi in the 14th century.

**Q. 3. What are the Major causes of water stress in India? Give at least two reasons**

**Answer:** Global Precipitation and renewable water sources

**Explanation:** The two major causes are 1) India receives only 4% of global precipitation 2) There are only 1,897 sq. km per annum total renewable water resources in India. The above two causes are the one due to which many places in India today are scarce in water.

**Q. 4. State the role of MNCs in depletion of fresh water?**

**Answer:** Use of water and power

The immense increase in industrial areas which include MNCs require more fresh water for use and consume more power. The power supplied to the industries is from hydroelectric plants. 22% of the total electricity is taken from the hydroelectric plants.

**Q. 5. What do you understand by hydrological cycle?**

**Answer:** The fresh water obtained from the surface runoff and groundwater is continually renewed through the hydrological cycle for usage. Hydrological cycle ensures that water is a renewable source.

**Q. 6. The per capita availability of fresh water is depleting in India gradually. Why?**

**Answer:** Depletion of fresh water in India is taking place gradually due to increase in population, urbanisation, agriculture modernisation and unaccounted demand for water. Deforestation is indirectly a reason for scarcity in India.

**Q. 7. Why is rainwater harvesting better than a multipurpose project?**

**Answer:** The three major reasons why rainwater harvesting is better than the multipurpose project is:

(1) Surveys show that Multipurpose projects could not meet the goal it was made for.

(2) Rain harvesting is socio-economically better.

(3) Also, environmentally it is a good alternative.

**Q. 8. which river project faced the public agitation in Gujarat?**

**Answer:** Sabarmati -basin

The Sabarmati-basin farmers had agitated because the water supply was provided to urban areas even at the time of drought and it became difficult for them to irrigate.

**Q. 9. How would you define inter-state water disputes?**

**Answer:** Interstate water disputes take place when either of the states is dependable on water resource and the needs for water are not satisfactory in either of the villages and are suffering from water scarcity. One of the examples is the Kaveri water dispute between Tamil Nadu and Karnataka.

**Q. 10. Mentions two merits of tankas.**

**Answer:** Tankas or tanks were used by many villages in Rajasthan for storing water. They were very large and could store large quantities of water. They were 6.1 meters deep, 4.27 meters long and 2.44 meters wide. Apart from that, they provided relief during peak summers.

**Q. 11. Read the following passage and answer the question given below:**

**Answer:** "The long-term average annual rainfall for the country is 1160 mm, which is highest anywhere in the world for a country of comparable size. The annual rainfall, however, fluctuates widely".

Write briefly about the possible consequence of such a situation of water supply.

The fluctuation of annual rainfall in the country will mostly lead to scarcity of water in urban areas and drought in some areas if the amount of rainfall reduces and in case of increase will lead to floods in most of the areas where there is no proper water management system.

**Q. 12. Rooftop rainwater harvesting is quite beneficial for urban people. Do you agree with it?**

**Answer:** Yes, rooftop harvesting is beneficial for urban areas as it will be of great use. Rainwater can be filtered and can be used for household works such as washing clothes etc. Also, when there is any kind of scarcity in water supply this water can be utilised in a very appropriate manner.

**Q. 13. What are the various reasons for diminishing levels of groundwater in the state of India? Suggest some measure to improve the situation?**

**Answer:** Overexploitation of water by the societies in urban areas and by the industries have led to the diminishing levels of groundwater. Adoption of rainwater harvesting techniques by societies is one of the best solutions for such diminishing water levels.

**Q. 14. What are the implications of pollution of river water?**

**Answer:** The implications of the pollution in rivers are:

- (1) Scarcity of water
- (2) Increase in global warming
- (3) Threatens aquatic flora and fauna.
- (4) This water when used by animals and plants can be a cause of health issues.

**Q. 15. Explain how the people of Rajasthan use to overcome the problem of water scarcity.**

**Answer:** One of the commonly used technique was rooftop rainwater harvesting. In the semi-arid regions of Rajasthan agricultural fields were converted into storage structures. In some regions such as Bikaner, Phalodi tankas, i.e. the underground water storage tanks were used to store water.

**Q. 16. Give an example to prove that a multi-purpose project creates social, economic and environmental imbalances.**

**Answer:** The biggest example is the floods in Maharashtra and Gujarat in 2006 which had occurred because of the aggravation of floods on opening the doors of dams. This not only led to the loss of lives but also led to soil erosion and disruption in the lives of people.

**Q. 17. Analyse the factors causing a problems associated with water resources in India.**

**Answer:** Post-independence, the factors that caused problems with water resources in India are as follows:

1. Increasing industrialisation
2. Urbanization and their demands for water
3. Industrial wastes released into water bodies such as rivers, lakes etc.
4. More demand for hydroelectric power by the industries.
5. Indiscriminate use of water.

The above are some of the major factors due to which India is facing a problem of water scarcity.

**Q. 18. What are multi-purpose projects and why they are called so?**

**Answer:** Multi-purpose projects are the projects which were constructed after the independence of India to use the water for various purposes. Dams are one of the major multi-purpose projects. The uses of multi-purpose projects are:

- (1) They provide water for irrigation.
- (2) Dam water is used for hydroelectric plants to generate electricity.
- (3) Dam water is also supplied for domestic use.

These multi-purpose projects were also used to stop floods, but they have failed many a times. Bhakra Nangal project is one of the biggest multi-purpose projects in India.

**Q. 19. Describe in brief the categorisation of dams in India.**

**Answer: 1.** Dams are generally built for the purpose of hydroelectricity, irrigation, water storage, flood control, etc.

2. Dams are classified according to structure, intended purpose or height.
3. Based on structure and the materials used, dams are classified as timber dams, embankment dams or masonry dams, with several subtypes.
4. According to the height, dams can be categorised as large dams and major dams or alternatively as low dams, medium height dams and high dams.

**Q. 20. How are rainwater systems prevalent in India with different names and methods?**

**Answer:** There are traditional rainwater harvesting systems followed in India. They are:

- 1) In mountainous regions, the technique named as 'kul' and 'gul' is used where the diversion channels are built.
- 2) Next is the rooftop technique which is mostly used in Rajasthan.
- 3) Structures named 'khadins' and 'johad' are also used in Rajasthan where the agricultural fields are converted into storage structures.
- 4) In Bikaner, Phalodi tankas which are the underground water storage tanks are used to store water.

The rooftop technique is used even today in urban areas to conserve rain water and use it when needed.

**Q. 21. Despite various advantages, multi-purpose projects are opposed by people. Why?**

**Answer:** One of the major reasons the multi-purpose projects were opposed was that it could not complete the purpose it was built for.



- 1) One of its purposes was to avoid floods. Instead, it is found that these multi-purpose projects aggravated the flood water which led to the loss of lives and soil erosion.
- 2) It disturbed the lives of people living by rehabilitating them.
- 3) It does not satisfy the socio-economic principles whereas the rainwater harvesting system does.
- 4) Environmentally rainwater harvesting systems are considered more environmentally friendly compared to multi-purpose projects.

**Q. 22. Analyse how can an individual contribute to saving water.**

**Answer:** The best way an individual can contribute to saving water is as follows:

- 1) Use water only as needed.
- 2) Preventing the water bodies from polluting by not throwing waste into it.
- 3) Planting trees in their own surroundings which will eventually increase rainfall.
- 4) Preventing the misuse of electricity will indirectly contribute to the saving of water, as most of the electricity generated is through the hydroelectric power plants.

**Q. 23. Narrate how particular dam in a flood-prone area has recently failed to prevent a flood. Find out why it happened. Could this be avoided? How?**

**Answer:** In the year 2006, the floods that occurred in Maharashtra and Gujarat were due to the aggravation of floods by the opening of gates of dams.

The major cause of this was the sedimentation in the reservoir.

Short-term measure to avoid this could be better management of dams, issuing a warning to the people regarding heavy rains, making arrangements for them for minimising human damage, etc.

Long-term measures include - adapting the rain water harvesting systems both in urban areas and villages.

- 1) Using the roof top system rain water can be used in a proper way and floods can be prevented.
- 2) Underground water tanks if made in every house, will help in storing water in the case of heavy rainfall.

# Agriculture

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Name some factors on which farming practice in India depends.**

**Answer:** Due to a long growing season, various types of soils, climate, and large agricultural area, India is an important producer of many crops. The factors on which farming practice in India depend upon can be divided into two types –

- a) Physical factors which include climate, soil, and landform.
- b) Socio-economic factors which include demand for food/cash crops, technology, labour and organization.

**Q. 2. In which type of farming, primitive tools are used.**

**Answer:** India is predominantly an agricultural country. Different forms of agriculture are practiced in the country which depends upon a variety of physical, environmental and socio-economic conditions. One type of agriculture that is practiced in the country is primitive subsistence farming and is one of the oldest methods used for growing and harvesting crops. In this form, the producer lives directly on what he produces. It is fully dependent on natural environmental factors along with family labour, and there is no involvement of technology in any form. The tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks that are used are also primitive in nature. It is mostly observed in less economically developed areas where population density is high, but means of gainful employment outside of agriculture is low.

**Q. 3. Name the farming in which a patch of land is cleared and burned for cultivation.**

**Answer:** The 'slash and burn' method of farming known as 'Jhumming cultivation' in India is practiced generally by tribal people. It is also known as shifting cultivation. In this system, forest land is cleared for raising crops until the soil loses its fertility. With the loss of soil fertility, the farmer moves to newer forest lands often leading to severe environmental degradation.

**Q. 4. Rabi crops are majorly grown in which states of India?**

**Answer:** Agricultural crops in India are often divided into three types based on the cropping season. These are – rabi, Kharif and zaid. When cultivation began in early winter (October -December) and harvested during the summer months (April -June), it is known as the winter crop or rabi crop. Although it is not the major cropping season in India, winter wheat is important in Northern India. Rabi crops are mainly grown in the states from the north and north-western parts of India such as Punjab, Haryana, Himachal Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir, Uttarakhand and Uttar Pradesh.

## **Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. Give one example of leguminous crops.**

**Answer:** Leguminous crops are related to or denoted by the plants of the pea family. These have seeds in pods, distinctive flowers, and typically root nodules containing symbiotic bacteria able to fix nitrogen. A large number of such crops are utilized as food crops as well as fallow crops. Leguminous crops include pulses, beans, groundnuts, and cowpeas.

**Q. 2. The crop is one of the major food crops in India and mostly rain-fed. Name the crop.**

**Answer:** Jowar is a type of millet crop that is one of the major food crops in India, and its cultivation is mostly rain-fed.

**Q. 3. Which crop is known as ‘Poor Man’s Meat’?**

**Answer:** Lentils which are a type of pulse crops, under the leguminous crop type, is known as ‘poor man’s meat’ as it has high protein along with high dietary fibre but low fat. Lentils are also packed with a variety of minerals. Examples of lentils include green gram, yellow gram, orange gram, black gram, and Bengal gram.

**Q. 4. Name a plantation crop of Assam.**

**Answer:** Cultivation of a single crop on a large scale with an organization similar to industrial production is called plantation agriculture. In India, tea, coffee, rubber, sugarcane, banana, etc., are important plantation crops. Tea is an important plantation crop in Assam.

## **Check Point 03**

**Q. 1. Which crop provide the raw material for jaggery and molasses?**

**Answer:** Sugarcane which provides the necessary raw material for jaggery and molasses is grown in India mainly for producing sweeteners.

**Q. 2. Apart from cooking, what are the other uses of oilseeds?**

**Answer:** Different oilseeds are grown in India, and they can be divided into two categories. Edible oilseeds include groundnut, rapeseed, mustard, sesame, sunflower, and soya bean. These are mostly used as a cooking medium. Non-edible oilseeds include linseed, castor seed, and cottonseed. These are mostly used in paint and varnish, leather industry, and as a raw material in soap-making, cosmetics, and ointments.

**Q. 3. Name the variety of coffee grown in India, that initially was brought from Yemen.**

**Answer:** The variety of coffee grown in India that was initially brought from Yemen is called Arabica. It is grown in the hills of Karnataka (Kodagu, Chikkamagaluru and Hassan), Kerala (Malabar region) and Tamil Nadu (Nilgiris District, Yercaud and Kodaikanal).

**Q. 4. Why jute fibre is suitable for making bags, mats, ropes, carpets etc. but not cloths?**

**Answer:** Jute was traditionally the most important industrial crop of eastern India. The fibre obtained from the jute plant is rough in texture and uneven making it an ideal raw material for ropes, gunny bags, mats etc. but not for cloth. Its roughness makes it an uncomfortable material for clothing purposes.

**Q. 5. What was the main focus of the first Five Year Plan?**

**Answer:** Continued efforts have been made to develop agriculture in the country since independence. One of the most important processes through which this was done was the Five-Year Plans carried out in the country. These plans are centralized and integrated national economic programmes. The first Five Year Plan (1951 -1956) strongly supported agricultural production, and its main focus was 'land reforms' through the abolition of the zamindari system, ceiling on land holdings and consolidation of fragmented land holdings.

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. Name two industries based on agricultural raw material.**

**Answer:** Industries that depend on agriculture for raw materials are called agro-based industries. Two examples of such industries are as follows –

- a) Sugar industry which depends upon sugarcane crop for raw materials
- b) Jute Textile industry which depends upon jute crop for jute fibres which are the most important raw material for it.

**Q. 2. Dahiya and Podu are two agriculture practices found in Madhya Pradesh and Andhra Pradesh respectively. Is there any similarity between these two agricultural practices?**

**Answer:** Dahiya and Podu are two agriculture practices found in Madhya Pradesh and Andhra Pradesh respectively. They are similar agricultural practices and better known as shifting cultivation. It is also known as 'Jhumming' cultivation and mostly practiced by tribal people. In this system, forest land is cleared for raising crops until the soil loses its fertility. With the loss of soil fertility, the farmer moves to newer forest lands often leading to severe environmental degradation.

**Q. 3. One type of agriculture produces only food crop for sustaining the high population and domestic animals. Name the farming type.**

**Answer:** Intensive subsistence farming produces only food crop for sustaining the high population and domestic animals. It is characterized by small land holdings which are cultivated by the farmer and his family using simple tools and more labour. Often farming is further intensified by the use of fertilizers and artificial irrigation.

**Q. 4. Give two reason for variation of the degree of commercialisation of agriculture from region to region.**

**Answer:** India is predominantly an agricultural country. Different forms of agriculture are practiced in the country which depends upon a variety of physical, environmental and socio-economic conditions. The commercialization of agriculture refers to the process of growing crops mainly for commercial purposes rather than for individual consumption. Two important reasons behind the variation of degrees in the commercialization of agriculture are as follows –

**a) Demand –** Often one region requires a certain crop but may be unable to grow it or needs surplus quantity. Thus, other areas where the crop is not in high demand practices commercial farming of said crop. E.g., Punjab and Haryana have a preference for wheat but also grow rice as a commercial crop, which is sought after by states like Orissa, West Bengal which is rice based.

**b) Land fertility –** Often available agricultural land is not fertile enough for growing food crops. These lands are then used for a variety of plantations like rubber, bamboo etc.. which have commercial purposes.

**Q. 5. Identify the places where apricot and walnut are produced in India.**

**Answer:** Apricots and walnuts are horticultural crops and are mostly grown in the states of Jammu and Kashmir, and Himachal Pradesh in India.

**Q. 6. Give two examples of zaid crops.**

**Answer:** Zaid crops refer to those crops grown in the summer season that falls between the harvesting of kharif crops and sowing of rabi crops. Two examples of zaid crops include watermelon and cucumber.

**Q. 7. As Darjeeling of west Bengal is famous for tea Punjab for wheat, Which crop is Kerala famous for?**

**Answer:** Kerala is famous for the plantation crop rubber. It is the leading rubber plantation state in India. It accounts for 92 per cent of the country's total natural rubber production.

**Q. 8. Why organic farming is much in demand today?**

**Answer:** Organic farming is defined as an integrated farming system that strives for sustainability. It is very much in demand today because it does not use any harmful chemical fertilizers or pesticides in the growth process. Instead, it depends on organic

fertilizers and involves techniques like crop rotation for agriculture which goes a long way to in providing positive benefits to the environment.

**Q. 9. Briefly discuss the cultivation of oilseeds in India.**

**Answer:** India is the second largest producer of oilseeds after China according to 2014 data. Different oilseeds are grown in India, and they cover approximately 12% of the total cropped area of the country. Different oilseeds are grown in India, and they can be divided into two categories.

Edible oilseeds include groundnut (Kharif crop), rapeseed, mustard (rabi crop), sesame (Kharif crop in the north and rabi crop in the south), sunflower and soya bean. These are mostly used as a cooking medium.

Non-edible oilseeds include linseed (rabi crop), castor seed and cottonseed. These are mostly used in paint and varnish, leather industry, and as a raw material in soap-making, cosmetics, and ointments. Drylands of Malwa Plateau, Marathwada, Gujrat, Rajasthan, Telangana and Rayalaseema region of Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka Plateau are oilseeds growing regions of India.

**Q. 10. Discuss the technological innovations which improved farming in India.**

**Answer:** Some of the technological innovations which improved farming in India are as follows –

- a) Expansion of irrigation facilities along with the consolidation of the existing systems has been the main strategy for increasing agricultural production.
- b) Fertilizer is a key input for increasing agricultural production. The government provides a subsidy for the use of fertilizers so that farmers can use them for augmenting crop production.
- c) Introduction of the high yielding varieties of seeds was the most important step in the late 1960s to increase agricultural production in India.
- d) Promotion of farm mechanization has been an important initiative taken by the government since the period of Green Revolution during the late 1960s.

**Q. 11. Give the reason for which intensive subsistence farming still flourish in India.**

**Answer:** Intensive subsistence farming produces only food crop for sustaining the high population and domestic animals. It is characterized by small land holdings which are cultivated by the farmer and his family using simple tools and more labour. Often farming is further intensified by the use of fertilizers and artificial irrigation. This type of farming is mainly observed in areas with high population pressure on land.

One of the main reasons why intensive subsistence farming is still flourishing in India today is the existence of small land holdings and a lack of alternative sources of

livelihood. In rural backward areas, owing to 'right of inheritance', land holdings have reduced in size with the subsequent division in the later generations. Farmers tend to utilize these small plots for the maximum output which has led to intensive farming where the yield per unit area is high.

**Q. 12. Give a brief discussion on pulses cultivation in India.**

**Answer:** Pulses form an integral part of the diet in the Indian subcontinent. Not only is India the leading producer of pulses in the world, but it is also the biggest consumer. Pulses are leguminous in nature and enrich soil fertility by fixing nitrogen in the soil. This makes it suitable for mixed cropping systems or as a part of crop rotation. A major variety of pulses grown in India include tur (arhar), urad, moong, masoor, peas, and Bengal gram. They are mostly grown during the latter half of the rabi season as they need less moisture. Major pulse producing states in India are Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan, Maharashtra, and Karnataka.

**Q. 13. Name three food crops other than grains with respective climate condition required for them.**

**Answer:** Any crop grown for food, either commercially or for individual use is called food crop. Grains like rice and wheat form an integral part of food crops. But there are other grains known as coarse grains like jowar, bajra, ragi (collectively called millets), maize and barley that also fall under the category of food crops. Following parts describe the climatic conditions required for the growth of jowar, bajra, and maize.

**a) Jowar –** It is grown both as a Kharif and rabi crop and is the main food grain in the semi-arid and arid regions of central and southern India. Although it is mostly grown in areas with which are moist and hardly needs irrigation, it is a hardy drought-resistant crop.

**b) Bajra –** Similar to jowar, bajra also grows well in dry and warm climate.

**c) Maize –** This is a Kharif crop and grown under semi-arid conditions with a temperature range of 21°C to 27°C.

**Q. 14. Write the difference between the cultivation of two important beverages, tea and coffee.**

**Answer:**

Difference in cultivation of two important beverages		
Factors	Tea	Coffee
<b>Climate</b>	Tropical and sub-tropical climate required. 21°C to 29°C is ideal for the production of tea. The high temperature is required in summer. The lowest temperature for the growth of tea is 16°C. 150-250 cm of rainfall is required for tea cultivation.	Coffee is grown on the tropical highlands. It requires a temperature between 16 degrees C and 28 degrees C, all year round. It is sensitive to cold and frost. Direct sunrays are injurious to the plant; it is often grown in the shades of other trees. The coffee plant needs rainfall ranging between 125 cm and 200 cm. The rainfall should be well distributed throughout the year.
<b>Soil</b>	Tea shrubs require fertile mountain soil mixed with lime and iron. The soil should be rich in humus.	The coffee plant needs deep loamy soil formed from weathered lava. Coffee soils in India belong to red and lateritic soils. They are rich in iron and organic matter.
<b>Landform</b>	Tea is grown favourably on well-drained gently rolling plain lands, low plateau areas, and hill-slopes.	Hill slopes and plateau areas are favourable for coffee cultivation.
<b>Demand</b>	Tea is the most popular beverage in India leading to high internal demand.	Coffee is the second most popular beverage in India, and it also has a relatively higher price.
<b>Labour</b>	Tea is one of the most labour-intensive types of cultivation requiring an abundant supply of cheap and skilled labour.	Coffee is also labor-intensive cultivation, but its requirement are much less than that of tea.
<b>Areas of production</b>	Major tea-producing states are Assam, hills of Darjeeling and Jalpaiguri districts, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu, and Kerala. Apart from these, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Meghalaya, Andhra Pradesh and Tripura are also tea-producing states in the country.	Coffee cultivation is confined to the Nilgiri in Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu.

**Q. 15. Discuss the condition required for the cultivation of wheat.**

**Answer:** Wheat is the second most important food crop in India after rice. It is the staple food crop in the northern, north-western and western regions of India. The following are the favourable conditions required for wheat cultivation –



**a) Climate** – Wheat is cultivated mainly as a winter crop in India. It requires a cool growing season and bright sunshine during the ripening stage. Unlike rice, excessive moisture is injurious to the crop, and it requires an annual rainfall of 50 -75 cm that should be evenly distributed. Irrigation is necessary if the rainfall goes below the stated amount.

**b) Soil** – Alluvial soil is highly suitable for wheat cultivation, but it should be well drained.

**c) Landform** – Gently rolling plain lands suitable for use by heavy machinery like tractors are ideal for wheat cultivation.

**d) Demand** – High demand has led to an increase in wheat production and areas in north India cultivate it as a commercial crop.

**e) Technology** – Due to high demand, wheat cultivation has been mechanized with the use of agricultural machinery. Green Revolution has also contributed to an increase in wheat cultivation.-

**Q. 16. What are the reasons in Western India where rice is cultivated? Why is it cultivated in these regions?**

**Answer:** Rice is the most important food crop in India and is a staple diet for the north-eastern, eastern and southern parts of India. Rice farming is mainly found as intensive subsistence type of farming due to high demand. Intensive subsistence farming produces only food crop for sustaining the high population and domestic animals. It is characterized by small land holdings which are cultivated by the farmer and his family using simple tools and more labour. Often farming is further intensified by the use of fertilizers and artificial irrigation. This has led to a low yield rate in rice production. A combination of high demand and low yield rates in traditional rice-growing areas have led to rice cultivation in non -traditional areas like western India.

Western India has states like Punjab and Haryana which is well known for their wheat production. Though characterized by a semi-arid climate, these areas have very high access to irrigation, and their land holdings are also comparatively larger. Successful implementation during the Green Revolution has also changed the entire agricultural process in these areas. These areas have wheat as their staple diet, and hence the demand for rice is not as high as the regions where rice is the staple diet. All the above-mentioned factors have contributed behind the cultivation of rice in the western regions of India. While the primary rice-growing regions of India cultivate it for subsistence, the western region cultivates it on a commercial basis and helps in reducing the demand-supply gap for rice.

**Q. 17. Describe horticulture as important activity in India.**

**Answer:** The cultivation, processing, and sale of fruits, nuts, vegetables, ornamental plants, and flowers as well as many additional services is called horticulture. The

horticulture sector includes a wide variety of crops such as fruits, vegetables, spices, plantation crops, floriculture, medicinal and aromatic plants, cashew etc. The diversity of physiographic, climatic and soil characteristics enable India to grow a large variety of horticultural crops. In 2014 India was the second largest producer of fruits and vegetables in the world after China.

1. India grows both tropical and temperate fruits. Some of the fruits produced in India are – Mangoes of Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Telangana, Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal, oranges of Nagpur and Cherrapunjee (Meghalaya), bananas of Kerala, Mizoram, Maharashtra and Tamil Nadu, etc.
2. India produces about 13 per cent of the world's vegetables. It is an important producer of a pea, cauliflower, onion, cabbage, tomato, brinjal, and potato.
3. Besides the above-mentioned fruits and vegetables, India also grows a variety of spices which not only have a high internal demand but an increasing export demand. Coconut and cashew are two other important horticultural crops that India is a leading producer of.
4. India is the largest producer of coconut in the world with the distinction of having the highest productivity with the southern states accounting for more than 80 per cent of coconut nuts production.
5. India occupies a premier position in cashew-nut production, contributing about 43 per cent of the world production and is also the largest exporter of cashew-nut in the world.

Horticultural is thus an important agricultural activity in India. Owing to the higher demand and export requirements, it is not only responsible for income generation but also for creating more employment opportunities. It also acts as a practical alternative for areas with low productivity of traditional crops.

#### **Q. 18. What are the obstacles in ensuring food security in India?**

**Answer:** India's food security policy has a primary objective to ensure the availability of food grains to the common people. The government of India has tried to combat food insecurity through a carefully designed food security system which includes the creation of buffer stock and a public distribution system. In spite of these efforts, there are several obstacles that create problems for ensuring food security in India.

The Food Corporation of India (FCI) procures food grains from the farmers at the government announced minimum support price (MSP). The government used to provide subsidies on agriculture inputs such as fertilizers, power, and water. These subsidies have now reached unsustainable levels and have also led to large-scale inefficiencies in the use of these scarce inputs.

1. Excessive and imprudent use of fertilizers and water has led to waterlogging, salinity and depletion of essential micronutrients in the soil.

2. The high MSP, subsidies in input and committed FCI purchases have distorted the cropping pattern. Wheat and paddy crops are being grown more for the MSP they get. Punjab and Haryana are foremost examples. This has also created a serious imbalance in inter-crop parities.

3. The public distribution system which ensures the availability of food grains to the poor also doesn't work as it is intended. The issue price is different for those below the poverty line (BPL) and those above the poverty line (APL). But the categorization being imperfect has led to the exclusion of a number of deserving poor people from having access to subsidized food grains.

4. It is also difficult to maintain the categorization as often the failure of one crop can make an APL family fall below the poverty line.

These issues need to be urgently addressed if India wants to gain food security for its population.

**Q. 19. Discuss the challenges now agricultural sector face in India?**

**Answer:** India is predominantly an agricultural country. Different forms of agriculture are practiced in the country which depends upon a variety of physical, environmental and socio-economic conditions. The major challenges faced by the agricultural sector in India varies according to agro-ecological and historical experiences of its different regions making them region specific. Yet there are certain problems which are common and range from physical constraints to institutional hindrances. The following are the major challenges in the agricultural sector in India –

**a) Environmental factors** – Indian agriculture is largely dependent on monsoon. Climatic uncertainties like droughts and floods readily result in crop failure and production fluctuations. Soil erosion in various parts of India has caused loss of valuable agricultural land.

**b) Economical factors** – Dearth of capital is a perennial problem for Indian agriculture. Majority of Indian farmers have uneconomic farm sizes which result in subsistence level of production. The inputs of modern agriculture are also very expensive. This has led to small and marginal farmers avail loans from various institutions and money lenders. With poor loan repayment capacity, they are stuck in a vicious cycle of poverty. Along with a dearth in the capital, exploitative type of land tenure system is also practiced in India. Lack of proper implementation of land reform programmes in many areas has caused inequality in the distribution pattern of land and has resulted in poor productivity and agricultural backwardness. Increasing pressure of population on a fixed amount of agricultural land has also caused fragmentation of holdings and low productivity.

**c) Social factors** – Wasteful agricultural practices like shifting cultivation destroy the functional capability of agricultural land. Traditional techniques also affect agricultural productivity in India. Also, there is massive underemployment in the agricultural sector. Economically viable work is unavailable in the rural areas beyond the cropping season.

The government has undertaken various programmes to correct or combat these problems and if implemented properly will help in addressing the above issues.

**Q. 20. What are the institutional reforms initiated by the government in agricultural sectors? Explain their method.**

**Answer:** Continued efforts have been made to develop agriculture in the country since independence. The institutional reforms consist of various measures taken by the Central and State government from time to time. The following are the various institutional reforms initiated by the government in India.

**a) Land Reform** - The first Five Year Plan (1951 -1956) strongly supported agricultural production, and its main focus was 'land reforms' through the abolition of the zamindari system, ceiling on land holdings and consolidation of fragmented land holdings. But the progress of land reform is generally unsatisfactory in many states.

**b) Crop Insurance Scheme** - Indian agriculture is largely dependent on monsoon. Climatic uncertainties like droughts and floods readily result in crop failure and production fluctuations. To combat this uncertainty, the government provides insurance coverage and financial support to farmers.

**c) Establishment of Cooperative societies and Grameen Banks** – These institutions provide loans to farmers for at low interest and also encourages the adoption of more modern farming methods. They also help stabilize farms during disaster years.

**d) Government support** - Kissan Credit Card (KCC), Personal Accident Insurance Scheme (PAIS) are some other schemes introduced by the Government of India for the benefit of the farmers.

Establishment of Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR), agricultural universities, veterinary services, and animal breeding centres, horticulture development, research and development in the field of meteorology and weather forecasting etc. have also been carried out by the government to develop agriculture in the country.

**Q. 21. Briefly discuss the methods of cultivation practised in India with at least two examples on each method.**

**Answer:** India is predominantly an agricultural country. Different forms of agriculture are practiced in the country which depends upon a variety of physical, environmental and socio-economic conditions. The following systems are practiced at present in different parts of India –

**a) Primitive subsistence farming** - One type of agriculture that is practiced in the country is primitive subsistence farming and is one of the oldest methods used for growing and harvesting crops. The tools like a hoe, do and digging sticks that are used are also primitive in nature. It is mostly observed in less economically developed areas where population density is high.

**b) Intensive subsistence farming** - Intensive subsistence farming produces only food crop for sustaining the high population and domestic animals. It is characterized by small land holdings which are cultivated by the farmer and his family using simple tools and more labour. Often farming is further intensified by the use of fertilizers and artificial irrigation. This has led to regions where the yield per unit area is high. Rice cultivation in the eastern regions of India is a type of intensive subsistence farming as they are cultivated on small plots of land, with high manual labour. Graduated terrace steps in the hilly regions of India used for agriculture is another example of this type of farming.

**c) Commercial farming** – This is a form of market-oriented and profit motivated farming. In this farming, consumption of the cultivated products by the farmers, if at all done, is an insignificant proportion of the total production. Demand patterns and price structure are the major determinants of production pattern. Rice cultivation in Punjab and Haryana where wheat forms the staple diet is an example of commercial farming. Cultivation of a single crop on a large scale with an organization similar to industrial production is called plantation agriculture which is a type of commercial farming. In India, tea, coffee, rubber, sugarcane, banana, etc., are important plantation crops.

**Q. 22. How is rubber important for the Indian economy? What conditions are required for its cultivation? Name two states where it is produced.**

**Answer:** Rubber plays a crucial role in the Indian economy. It provides the principal raw material for manufacturing over 35000 varieties of products ranging from toy balloons to giant size tires. It provides employment to a sizeable population in its agricultural sector, and a sizeable number makes their living from processing, transporting and marketing rubber goods. Rubber plantations thus contribute substantially to economic prosperity in rubber growing areas. The Indian rubber goods manufacturing industry heavily depends on natural rubber which accounts for 80% of the total raw material.

**The conditions that are required for rubber cultivation are as follows –**

**a) Climate** – It grows well in hot and humid climates with the long dry season being unfavourable for its cultivation.

**b) Soil** – Loamy soils are favoured for rubber cultivation.

**c) Landform** – Gently rolling plain lands free from waterlogging that is below an altitude of 400 meters is ideal for rubber cultivation.

**d) Demand** – Presence of a ready market is a major factor for the rapid growth of natural rubber production in the country.

**e) Labour** – The cultivation is not labour intensive.

**f) Capital** – a High investment of capital is necessary due to preparation, maintenance and a long gestation period of rubber plants.

Two important states for rubber plantation include Kerala and Tamil Nadu. Kerala accounts for most of the rubber plantations in India and major districts include Kottayam, Quilon, and Kozhikode.

# Minerals and Energy Resources

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. State one use of mineral in our daily life.**

**Answer:** Minerals have a variety of practical uses in the pharmaceutical, manufacturing construction, petroleum and high-tech industries. Not only is it valued in the form of precious and semi-precious gemstones, but it is also essential for the proper functioning of human life. Other than the daily intake requirement of minerals by a human body, even the daily toothpaste we use has minerals in it. Abrasive minerals like silica and limestone are used as cleaning agents, while minerals like fluorite produce fluoride which prevents cavities. The white colouring of most toothpaste comes from titanium oxide which is derived from minerals such as rutile, ilmenite and anatase. The sparkle in some toothpaste comes from the mineral mica. Even the toothbrush and tube containing the paste is plastic which is mineral derivative from petroleum.

**Q. 2. What differentiates a ferrous mineral from a non-ferrous mineral?**

**Answer:** The term 'ferrous' means containing or consisting of iron. Ferrous minerals are those minerals that contain iron while non-ferrous minerals are those that do not contain iron. In the following table, their difference has been further illustrated.

Sr. No	Ferrous Mineral	Non-ferrous mineral
1.	These contain iron as an element in their composition.	These do not contain iron as an element of their composition.
2.	Because of the iron content, these show the high magnetic property.	Does not show any magnetic property.
3.	When exposed to the elements, they are highly corrosive.	When exposed to elements they are less corrosive.
4.	They have high tensile strength as they can carry a high amount of strain.	They have low tensile strength.
5.	They are essentially used in metallurgical industries.	They are essentially used in electrical industries.
6.	Examples include iron-ore, manganese etc.	Examples include copper, bauxite, lead, zinc, gold etc.

**Q. 3. What are the important centres of bauxite deposits in India?**

**Answer:** Bauxite is an important mineral as aluminium; an important metal in many industries. India's bauxite deposits are mainly distributed between the states of Madhya Pradesh and Chattisgarh. The main areas are found in the Amarkantak Plateau (Madhya Pradesh), Maikal Hills (Chattisgarh), and the plateau region of Bilaspur – Katni (between Madhya Pradesh and Chattisgarh).

**Q. 4. State any one use of limestone.**

**Answer:** Limestone is a sedimentary rock but composed majorly of the minerals - calcite and aragonite which are different forms of calcium carbonate. It is the basic raw material required in the cement industry and essential for smelting iron in the blast furnaces.

**Q. 5. List two chief mica producing regions in India.**

**Answer:** Mica is one of the indispensable minerals used in the electrical and electronic industries because of its excellent insulating properties and resistance to high voltage. The states of Jharkhand and Rajasthan have many mica producing belts. Koderma – Gaya Hazaribagh belt of Jharkhand is the leading producer of mica in India. In Rajasthan, Ajmer has important mica producing belt around it.

**Q. 6. State one way by which mineral resources can be conserved.**

**Answer:** Minerals are non-renewable resources and once depleted cannot be replenished for further usage. Thus, it is important that we conserve this so that future generations can also benefit from its use. One of the most important manners in which minerals can be conserved is through the funding of researches that can develop new technology that avoids the wastage of minerals and provides ways for maximum utilization.

## **Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. When and where was first oil field in India discovered?**

**Answer:** Petroleum is the second most important energy resource after coal in India. Digboi in Assam also known as the Oil City is the oldest oil-producing centre in India. Crude oil was first discovered here in the late 19th century, and the first refinery was established here as early as 1901. The first oil well was also drilled here and is still in operation.

**Q. 2. What are the various categories of coal?**

**Answer:** Coal is an extremely important energy resource. It has several varieties based on the degrees of compression and the depth and time of burial. The following are the different varieties of coal.

- **Lignite** – This is the lowest quality of coal as it has the least carbon concentration. It is soft brown coal with high moisture content and mainly used in electricity generation.
- **Bituminous** – This is middle-quality coal with a high heating value. While it appears shiny and smooth, it may reveal a layered appearance on closer inspection. This type is highly popular for commercial use.



- **Anthracite** – This is the highest quality of coal with a lustrous black appearance. It is hard and brittle with a high percentage of fixed carbon and a low percentage of volatile material. It is mainly used in metal smelting and fabrication industries.

- **Peat** – contains less than 40-55 per cent of carbon. It also contains a sufficient amount of volatile matter and a lot of moisture.

**Q. 3. In which region the largest amount of natural gas is produced in India?**

**Answer:** Natural gas is a clean energy resource. It is often found in association with petroleum and is used not only as a source of energy but also as a raw material in the petrochemical industry. Assam, Tripura, Andhra Pradesh, Telangana and Gujarat have onshore fields that are also major producers of natural gas. Assam had the highest percentage in the gross production of onshore natural gas in the year 2016-17.

**Q. 4. Which minerals are used to generate atomic power?**

**Answer:** The release of nuclear energy to generate heat through nuclear reactions is called atomic power. The generated heat is mostly used to further generate electricity. It is one of the less carbon-intensive methods for electricity generation making it highly environmentally friendly. The main minerals that are used for nuclear reactions are uranium and thorium.

**Q. 5. Where are geothermal energy project located in India?**

**Answer:** The energy that is generated and stored in the earth is called geothermal energy. It is mostly used for electricity production and is a cost-effective and environmentally friendly energy source. But it is limited to areas with hot springs. Two experimental projects to harness this source has been set up in India. One is in Parvati Valley near Manikarn in Himachal Pradesh. The other is in Puga Valley, Ladakh.

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. Which metal can be obtained from bauxite?**

**Answer:** Bauxite is a non-ferrous mineral. It is a clay-like substance and a main source for the metal aluminium. It is the world's main source of aluminium. Aluminium is available from bauxite as it is formed from the decomposition of a wide variety of rocks rich in aluminium silicates. The metal aluminium is extremely important as it is highly malleable and ductile.

**Q. 2. Give a list of various varieties of coal. Where can we obtain lignite?**

**Answer:** Coal is an extremely important energy resource. It has several varieties based on the degrees of compression and the depth and time of burial. The following are the different varieties of coal.

**Lignite** – This is the lowest quality of coal as it has the least carbon concentration. It is soft brown coal with high moisture content and mainly used in electricity generation.

**Bituminous** – This is middle-quality coal with a high heating value. While it appears shiny and smooth, it may reveal a layered appearance on closer inspection. This type is **highly popular for commercial use**.

**Anthracite** – This is the highest quality of coal with a lustrous black appearance. It is hard and brittle with a high percentage of fixed carbon and a low percentage of volatile material. It is mainly used in metal smelting and fabrication industries.

**Peat** – contains less than 40-55 per cent of carbon. It also contains a sufficient amount of volatile matter and a lot of moisture.

In India, lignite deposits are found in Neyveli in Tamil Nadu.

**Q. 3. Name the metal which is made up of a series of plates and leaves.**

**Answer:** Mica is a non-metallic mineral which is made up of a series of plates and leaves. It is widely distributed and occurs in all rock types. It is available in a variety of colours and can be flaky. Mica is one of the indispensable minerals used in the electrical and electronic industries because of its excellent insulating properties and resistance to high voltage. The states of Jharkhand and Rajasthan have many mica producing belts. Koderma – Gaya Hazaribagh belt of Jharkhand is the leading producer of mica in India. In Rajasthan, Ajmer has important mica producing belt around it.

**Q. 4: Classify energy resources.**

**Answer:** The capacity to do work is called energy and it is essential for life processes. Any resource that can produce heat, power life, move objects and produce electricity is called an energy resource. Human energy consumption has grown steadily throughout history. Energy resources can be classified on a variety of basis like nature of their transaction, availability, etc. The most important classification is based on the conventionality in deriving the energy. According to this, energy resources are of two types –

(i) Conventional energy resources

(ii) Non-conventional energy resources.

**a) Conventional energy resources** – Any energy resource that is limited in nature and non-renewable and has been used since a long time is termed a conventional energy resource. Examples of this include coal, petroleum, natural gas and electricity.

**b) Non-conventional energy resources**- Any energy resource that is yet to be used on a large scale and can be naturally replenished on a human time scale is called non-conventional energy resource. Not only are these abundant in nature but also renewable. Examples of this include Nuclear or atomic energy, solar energy, wind power, biogas, tidal energy and geothermal energy.

**Q. 5. What is open pit mining?**

**Answer:** The definition of an open pit mine is "an excavation or cut made at the surface of the ground for the purpose of extracting ore and which is open to the surface for the duration of the mine's life." To expose and mine the ore, it is generally necessary to excavate and relocate large quantities of waste rock. This form of mining is generally used when commercially useful rocks or ores are found near the earth surface. Quarries that provide building materials are often considered to be a form of open pit mining. This form of mining is carried on in the selected area until the mine is exhausted of beneficial materials or when there is a danger of a cave in. Often the exhausted mines are converted into landfills or lakes depending upon the associated geographical factors. Twin Creeks Gold Mine in Nevada , USA is a classic example of open pit mining. In India, Hutti Gold Mine in Raichur district of Karnataka is an example of open pit mining.

**Q. 6. Name two minerals which are obtained from veins and lodes.**

**Answer:** Minerals occur under a variety of circumstances. It is important to understand their occurrence as the type of formation in which they occur determines the relative ease and cost of extraction of said minerals. In igneous and metamorphic rocks, minerals in their molten or gaseous forms are often pushed nearer to the earth's surface through crevices. They cool and solidify in these crevices. The smaller occurrences are called veins while the comparatively larger ones are called lodes. Major metallic minerals like tin and copper occur in nature in this manner.

**Q. 7. Koderma-Gaya-Hazaribagh belt of Jharkhand is rich in which mineral?**

**Answer:** Koderma – Gaya Hazaribagh belt of Jharkhand is the leading producer of mica in India. The British Geological Survey reported that as of 2005, this area also had the largest deposits of mica in the world. Mica is one of the indispensable minerals used in the electrical and electronic industries because of its excellent insulating properties and resistance to high voltage.

**Q. 8. What is geothermal energy? How can it be tapped?**

**Answer:** The energy that is generated and stored in the earth is called geothermal energy. It is mostly used for electricity production and is a cost-effective and environmentally friendly energy source.

1. The geothermal energy is sourced not only from the original formation of the planet but also from the radioactive decay of materials.
2. With increasing depth, the internal temperature of the earth keeps increasing. The difference in temperature between the core and the surface or the geothermal gradient drives a continuous conduction of thermal energy.
3. In areas of shallow depth, this thermal energy is often absorbed by the surrounding groundwater and rocks and often rises as steam. This steam power is then used for the generation of electricity.

4. Thus areas near plate tectonic boundaries which often have hot springs or weaker surface cover are often tapped for sourcing geothermal energy. But owing to its limited area of occurrence, it has not been fully exploited for the benefits of mankind.

**Q. 9. Which are the types of coal formation based on their geological ages? Where are they found in India?**

**Answer:** Coal is an extremely important energy resource. It has been formed from the compression of plant materials over thousands of years. Coal deposits in India are of two distinct geological ages. The earliest coal deposits are of Permian age formed about 270 million years ago. At that time, South Africa, South America, Antarctica, Australia, India and Madagascar formed a landmass called Gondwanaland. Coal formed in Gondwanaland are known as Gondwana Coal. Other deposits of Tertiary age (30-60 million years) have been formed comparatively recently. These are known as Tertiary Coal. The following table gives the distribution of coal fields in India according to their geological type.

Coalfields	Locations	
	State	Area
Tertiary Coalfields	Meghalaya	Cherrapunji, Mawlong and Shillong
	Assam	Mikir Hills
	Arunachal Pradesh	Namchik and Namphuk fields
	Nagaland	
Gondwana Coalfields	West Bengal - Jharkhand	Raniganj, Jharia, Bokaro and Karanpur coalfields of Damodar valley
	River valleys in south India	Mahanadi valley, Son Valley, Godavari valley and Wardah Valley

The above is not an exhaustive list but merely an indicator of the important coal sources according to geological type in India. Coalfields are present in almost all the states of India.

**Q. 10. Why should we conserve mineral and energy resources?**

**Answer:** Any resource that is of economic interest and available for eventual economic extraction from the earth's crust is called a mineral resource. Any resource that can produce heat, power life, move objects and produce electricity is called an energy resource.

While mineral resources provide the basic raw materials required by human society for development, energy resources provide the energy required for the functioning of human society. Like all resources, these are unevenly distributed throughout the world.

With uneven distribution comes uneven usage. These resources are also finite in nature. They have been formed over several millennia. Rapid exploitation of these resources for the development and progress of the complex modern society is depleting them at an alarming rate.

It has already been established that it takes millions of years for a viable mineral resource deposit to form. Same with conventional non-renewable energy resources. There is a huge disparity between the consumption rate and the replenishment rate of said resources. And this creates the need for the conservation of said resources.

If the humankind uses up the finite resources in one lifetime, the future generations will suffer. Without available resources, the economy will come to a halt leading to a halt in development and overall lowering of human living conditions.

**Q. 11. What is the relevance of non-conventional sources of energy in a country like India? Why do you think so?**

**Answer:** Any resource that can produce heat, power life, move objects and produce electricity is called an energy resource. Energy resources can be classified on a variety of basis like nature of their transaction, availability, etc. The most important classification is based on the conventionality in deriving the energy. According to this, energy resources are of two types –

**a) Conventional energy resources**

**b) Non-conventional energy resources.**

**(a) Conventional energy resources** – Any energy resource that is limited in nature and non-renewable and has been used since a long time is termed a conventional energy resource. Examples of this include coal, petroleum, natural gas and electricity.

**(b) Non-conventional energy resources-** Any energy resource that is yet to be used on a large scale and can be naturally replenished on a human time scale is called non-conventional energy resource. Not only are these abundant in nature but also renewable. Examples of this include Nuclear or atomic energy, solar energy, wind power, biogas, tidal energy and geothermal energy.

In a developing country like India, energy resources are highly important as they form the basis of the country's evolution. In such a scenario, non-conventional energy resources play a major role. Because of its geographic location, India has an abundant supply of non-conventional energy resources.

With research, it is possible to channel these sources for proper use, which in turn will lower India's dependency on conventional sources. India is affected in a negative manner by the rising oil and gas prices, switching resource options will lower the negative impacts. Conventional resources are mainly fossil fuels which inadvertently affect the environment. By switching to non-conventional resources, we will not only be

able to better the economy but also better the impacts on the environment and secure its future.

**Q. 12. Why is the conservation of resources important? Discuss associated with it.**

**Answer:** Conservation means the management of the resources for the benefit of the present as well as future generation. It does not mean the total curtailment of consumption but rather the controlled use of resources for greater benefits. Conservation of resources primarily includes reduction of wastage, controlled use and increased benefits. The term 'sustainable development' is frequently used to express the approaches to resource conservation. The importance of resource conservation has been provided in the following points –

- a) Resource conservation is needed to maintain the essential ecological processes and life support system which in turn ensures the survival of all living species.
- b) It is needed to satisfy the future need as a growing population size causes an increased demand for resources.
- c) Finite nature of conventional resource forms like fossil fuels makes it imperative that resources are conserved to expand the time span of usage.
- d) Resource conservation reduces environmental pollution and hence is important as environmental quality affects all species on earth.

**Methods of resource conservation include the following –**

- a) **Substitution** – Development of substitutes is a major principle of resource conservation. Non-renewable energy resources like fossil fuels may be substituted with renewable energy resources.
- b) **Recycling** – Certain resources can be recycled up to a certain limit and hence the declining trend in its quantity can be arrested for a time span. Iron is such a resource. If iron scraps are recycled in the iron and steel industry it can lower the dependence on raw iron.
- c) **Alternative technology** – Alternative technology can protect the material environment, create a longer lifespan for finite resources and increase satisfaction from the same amount. It needs to be environmentally friendly and less exploitative for it to be successful.
- d) **Reduction of wastage** – if wastages are reduced, a greater quantity of resources are available for consumption, and it will lead to resource conservation.
- e) **Development of awareness** – No conservation programme can be successful if the people are not involved. Awareness regarding the importance of resources is imperative for its conservation.

**f) Increased efficiency** – Increased resource demand is met by the increased functional resource value from the same quantity of resource input. For e.g., modern fuel-efficient cars can cover longer distances for the same amount of petrol.

Thus, from the above discussion, we can establish that resource conservation is the need of the hour and there are a variety of ways in which it can be achieved.

**Q. 13. Why is coal called the most important source of energy even today in India? Explain with reasons.**

**Answer:** Coal is a solid black mineral made up of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen and nitrogen in varying proportions. It is a type of fossil fuel where trapped solar energy in dead and decaying plant matter has been compressed over a period of time to give its current form.

Coal is the most important source of energy today in India. Its importance can be seen by the extent of its use in various aspects of the development of the country.

**a) Power generation** – It is the most important source of commercial energy in India. The thermal power which accounts for four-fifth of the country's power generation is mostly coal-based. Development of power generation is key to industrial development. Some of the big coal-based thermal stations include Farakka (West Bengal), Singrauli and Dadri (Uttar Pradesh), Korba (Madhya Pradesh) and Ramagundam (Andhra Pradesh).

**b) Iron and steel Industry** – Presence of Coking and high-grade non-coking coal – an essential raw material for steel determines the location of the iron and steel industry. These types of coal are predominantly found in the eastern part of India which explains the concentration of said industries in this region.

**c) Cement Industry** – Coal is one of the primary raw materials for cement manufacturing and is also used as a source of power in the form of electricity. Cement is a necessary material for a developing country like India which is undergoing rapid urbanization.

**d) By-products of coal and their industrial uses** – Coal is a source of a number of raw materials for chemical industries. The major by-products like tar, coal gas, benzole are used in a variety of industries like plastics, organic chemicals, fertilizers and pharmaceutical industries. India has a shortage of petroleum which has resulted in the growth of coal use in chemical industries.

**e) Transport fuel** – Though this was in the past, yet India faced rapid development with the introduction of railways which heavily depended on coal for fuelling the steam-powered engines. Even though it is not relevant today, the development of the Indian economy as a whole was based on coal power.

Thus, from the above discussion, it is evident that coal despite having negative impacts on the environment is essential for the development and sustenance of the Indian

economy. This trend will continue until alternative forms of cheaper, sustainable power is made available to the industries and the public.

**Q. 14. Explain the developments of non-conventional sources of energy in India.**

**Answer:** Energy resources can be classified on a variety of basis like nature of their transaction, availability, etc. The most important classification is based on the conventionality in deriving the energy. According to this, energy resources are of two types –

**a) Conventional energy resources**

**b) Non-conventional energy resources.**

In a developing country like India, the economy is highly dependent on conventional resources. The developments of non-conventional sources of energy in India have been undertaken in the following manner –

**A) Solar Thermal Energy – India** being a tropical country has vast amounts of free sunlight which can be converted to solar thermal energy through technology. This energy can be further utilized to not only generate electricity for commercial purposes but also for individual uses through the use of solar cookers and solar water heaters. Although the initial cost was high, currently with lowered costs for the required technology, solar power is becoming popular in industrial and individual uses.

**B) Wind Energy** - Wind energy is another very important, clean and renewable source of energy which is slowly making its presence felt in India. Wind farms in Tamil Nadu (from Nagercoil to Madurai), Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Gujarat, Kerala, Maharashtra and Lakshadweep are contributing towards the energy requirement in the country.

**C) Biogas** – Biogas originating from the anaerobic decomposition of bio-degradable materials is renewable and cleaner than other forms of energy. Its most popular use is as domestic fuel in rural areas. 'Gobar gas plants' that use the dung of cattle is an efficient use of manure and provides farmers not only with energy but also improved fertilizers.

**D) Tidal energy** - There are currently proposals for using tidal energy in India as the country has a vast coastline - about 6000 km and a number of places where we can conveniently harness energy from oceans.

**E) Geothermal energy** - The energy that is generated and stored in the earth is called geothermal energy. It is mostly used for electricity production and is a cost-effective and environmentally friendly energy source. But it is limited to areas with hot springs. Two experimental projects to harness this source have been set up in India. One is in Parvati Valley near Manikarn in Himachal Pradesh. The other is in Puga Valley, Ladakh.

**Q. 15. Examine Tidal energy and Geothermal energy as sources of energy for the future.**



**Answer:** Tidal energy and geothermal energy are non -conventional sources of energy as they have not been used on a large scale from a long time.

**Tidal energy :**

1. Power generated from the tides and open ocean currents. Floodgate dams are built across inlets.
2. During high tide water flows into the inlet and gets trapped when the gate is closed.
3. After the tide falls outside the flood gate, the water retained by the floodgate flows back to the sea via a pipe that carries it through a power-generating turbine.
4. The energy that is generated and stored in the earth is called geothermal energy. It is mostly used for electricity production and is a cost-effective and environmentally friendly energy source.

**Geothermal energy:**

1. The geothermal energy is sourced not only from the original formation of the planet but also from the radioactive decay of materials.
2. With increasing depth, the internal temperature of the earth keeps increasing.
3. The difference in temperature between the core and the surface or the geothermal gradient drives a continuous conduction of thermal energy.
4. In areas of shallow depth, this thermal energy is often absorbed by the surrounding groundwater and rocks and often rises as steam.
5. This steam power is then used for the generation of electricity. Thus, areas near plate tectonic boundaries which often have hot springs or weaker surface cover are often tapped for sourcing geothermal energy.

Both these energy sources produce almost no pollution and is a renewable energy source. But there is a need a lot of research to make them commercially viable and available for the general masses. Even if these sources are not major players in the energy production scenario, they have great potential for future use as they are based on the inexhaustible gravitational forces of the earth.

**Q. 16. "In comparison to coal and oil, hydroelectricity is a key source of energy." Comment on this statement.**

**Answer:** 1. Coal is a type of fossil fuel where trapped solar energy in dead and decaying plant matter has been compressed over a period of time to give its current form. It is burned to provide the necessary energy which is converted further into thermal power, fuel and various other raw materials for industries.

2. 'Oil' or petroleum is a naturally occurring inflammable liquid that is primarily composed of hydro-carbons. It has high economic importance as it is used for transportation, generation of electricity, power industries etc.

3. Hydroelectricity is the electricity generated from hydropower which is the power generated by utilizing the energy potential of running water.

The following table will provide a comparative study of all three energy sources –

	<b>Coal and Petroleum</b>	<b>Hydroelectricity</b>
<b>Advantages of hydroelectricity in comparison to coal and petroleum.</b>	These are finite sources of energy and limited in amount.	It is a self-renewable energy source.
	The cost of accessing and developing is high for these sources of energy along with the cost of distribution.	This a cheaper source of energy as recurring expenses is very low for the generation of Hydropower.
	These are highly polluting and adversely affects the environment.	This is a non-polluting which is a big advantage in today's world crippled by air pollution.
<b>Disadvantages of hydroelectricity in comparison to coal and petroleum.</b>	The raw materials required for energy generation can be stored for further use.	Since the raw material in this source is running water, it cannot be stored.
	Though expensive, they are still cheaper than hydroelectricity which required the building of expensive dams.	The initial investment is prohibitive in some areas.

From the above table, we can observe that the advantages of hydroelectricity far outweigh the disadvantages of the same in comparison to coal and petroleum energy resources. With technological advances, it is possible that hydroelectricity will one day replace the more conventional power sources of coal and petroleum.

**Q. 17. Explain the advantages of non-conventional sources of energy.**

**Answer:** Energy resources can be classified on a variety of basis like nature of their transaction, availability, etc. The most important classification is based on the conventionality in deriving the energy. According to this, energy resources are of two types –

**(a) Conventional energy resources**

**(b) Non-conventional energy resources.**

For a long time, humankind has been dependent on conventional sources of energy to propel their development. But the finite nature of such sources has created a demand and supply gap in this world which has resulted in a variety of problems that include discrepancies in development, war mongering, ill-effects on environment etc. In such a scenario, non-conventional energy resources play a very important role as alternative energy sources. The following points describe the advantages that such sources of energy have.

### **Advantages of non-conventional sources of energy**

- These sources are infinite sources of energy (sun, wind, rivers, organic matter, etc.) and contribute towards reduction of dependence on finite conventional energy resources, such as oil, natural gas, coal, etc.
- These sources are environment and human-friendly nature.
- They have better equal geographical distribution than conventional sources leading to the decentralisation of the energy system, making it possible for energy needs to be met at the regional and local level, thus relieving the pressure on infrastructure systems (electricity grids, roads, etc.) and reducing the losses from energy transmission.
- They cover a wider range of energy uses from individual level to industrial level. (Solar power can be used for solar cookers as well as to generate thermal power for a factory)
- With low operating costs and lower levels of influence by international markets, it is an economic boon for developing and under developed countries in the world.
- These energy sources are having the ability to create jobs at the local level as the plants and other technological needs are local based.

From the above points it is evident that non-conventional energy sources are advantageous in the long run not only for individuals but the countries as well as the world as a whole.

**Q. 18. What are the main qualities of iron ore deposit in India? Also discuss the distribution of iron mines in India? Mineral in India are unevenly distributed. Explain.**

**Answer:** The rocks and minerals from which metallic iron can be economically extracted is called iron ore. This mineral is used to make pig iron which in turn is used to make steel making it the backbone for industrial development in any country. Iron ore is of four different types as outlined below –

**a) Magnetite** – This is the best quality of iron ore with a up to or more than 70% of iron content. It is magnetic in nature making it a good conductor and highly valuable in the electrical industry.

**b) Haematite** – The second grade of iron ore has an iron content of 50 – 60% and is a very important source for industrial iron.

**c) Limonite** – This is an inferior iron ore as the iron content is around 40 -50% but economically viable because it can be accessed through open -cast mining.

**d) Siderite** – This is an iron carbonate with less than 40% of iron content making it the most inferior type of iron ore. But there are uses for it because of its elf-fluxing nature due to the presence of lime.

India is the 5th largest producer of iron ore in the world. The main qualities of the iron ore deposits found in India have been outlined below –

i) Average metal content of the ores is one of the highest (64%) among the major iron ore producing countries of the world.

ii) Production is dominated by haematite and magnetite. Mining of inferior quality ores is insignificant.

iii) Mining of iron ores in India is open-cast or surface-mining. Since underground mining is not needed, cost of mining is low.

### **Distribution of iron-ore in India**

1) Odisha-Jharkhand belt: In Odisha high grade hematite ore is found in Badampahar mines in the Mayurbhanj and Kendujhar districts. In the adjoining Singbhum district of Jharkhand haematite iron ore is mined in Gua and Noamundi.

2) **Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur belt:** lies in Chhattisgarh and Maharashtra. Very high grade hematites are found in the famous Bailadila range of hills in the Bastar district of Chhattisgarh. The range of hills comprise of 14 deposits of super high grade hematite iron ore which is best for steel making steel making. Iron ore from these mines is exported to Japan and South Korea via Vishakhapatnam port.

3) **Ballari-Chitradurga-Chikkamagaluru- Tumakuru belt** in Karnataka has large reserves of iron ore. The Kudremukh mines located in the Western Ghats of Karnataka are a 100 per cent export unit. Kudremukh deposits are known to be one of the largest in the world. The ore is transported as slurry through a pipeline to a port near Mangaluru.

4) **Maharashtra-Goa belt** includes the state of Goa and Ratnagiri district of Maharashtra. Though, the ores are not of very high quality, yet they are efficiently exploited. Iron ore is exported through Marmagao port.

Iron ore is also mined in Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu.

### **Mineral in India are unevenly distributed.**

Mineral resources provide the basic raw materials required by human society for development. Minerals found in their raw forms are called ores. India has a rich and

varied source of minerals. Although the vast alluvial plains of India do not have mineral deposits, the rich concentrations make up for this lack.

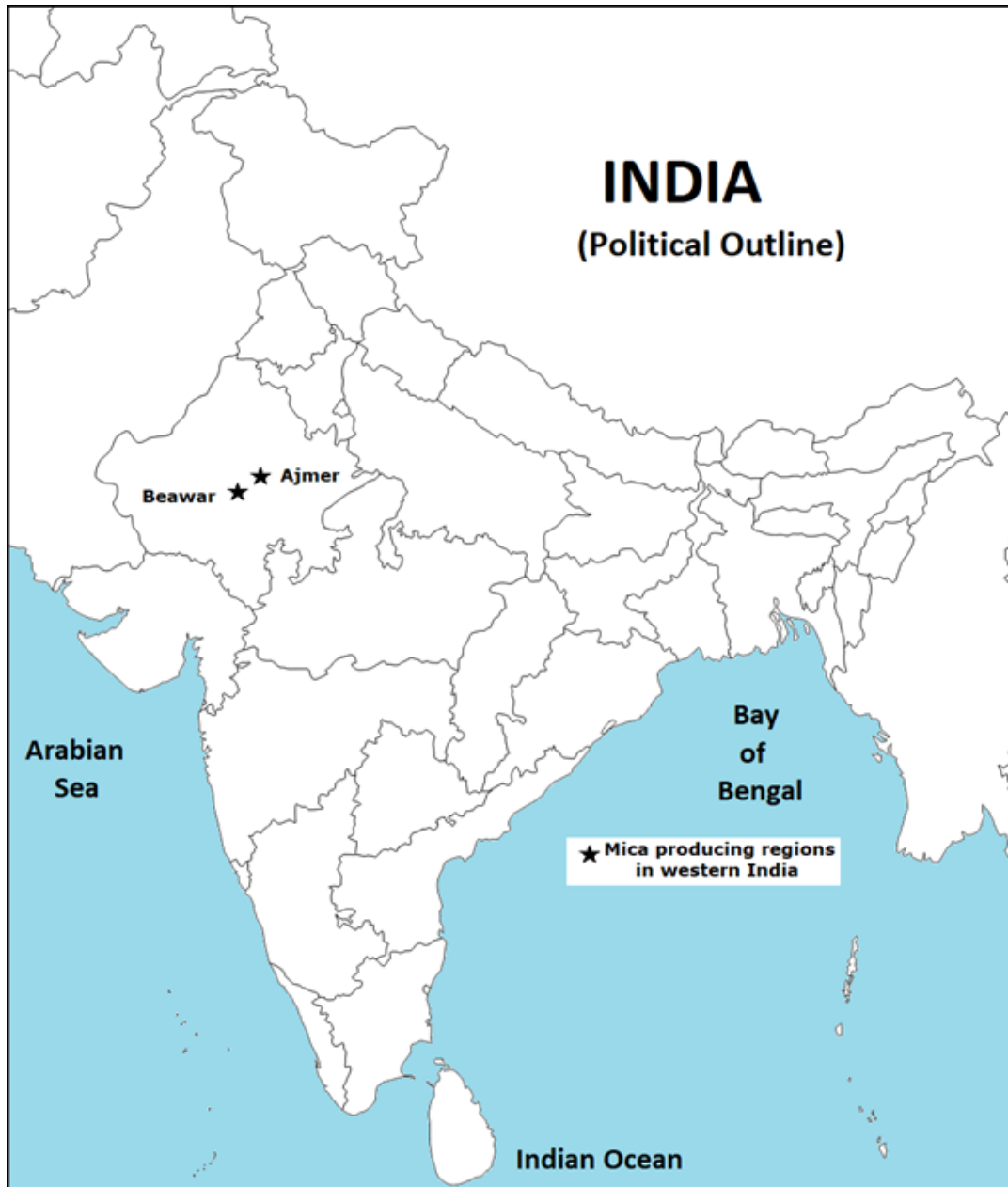
Peninsular rocks in the Deccan region and eastern plateau area contains most of the coal reserves, metallic and non-metallic minerals as well. Sedimentary rocks of the western and eastern coasts in Gujrat and Assam are rich in petroleum reserves. The rock system of Rajasthan has several important deposits of non-ferrous minerals.

It is evident from the distribution that India though blessed with a variety of mineral reserves is also hampered by their uneven distribution. Mineral formation processes can be blamed for this uneven distribution. Differences in geological structures, processes and time required in the formation of minerals have led to this uneven distribution of minerals in India.

**Q. 19 A. On the political map, locate, mark and label the following with appropriate symbols.**

Mica producing region of Western India

**Answer:**



**Q. 19 B. On the political map, locate, mark and label the following with appropriate symbols.**

**Nuclear power plant in Tamil Nadu and Gujarat.**

**Answer:**

# INDIA

(Political Outline)



# Manufacturing Industries

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Name two products that industries produce for agriculture.**

**Answer:** Agriculture forms the basis of any developing economy, and transforming agriculture from traditional to modern techniques is also important. This modern techniques in agriculture are done by equipment manufactured by the industries.

The products that industries produce for agriculture are:

Irrigation pumps, fertilizers, insecticides, pesticides, plastics, and PVC pipes, machines, tools etc. are some that are put in use by the farmers.

**Q. 2. What happens when industries are established in backward regions?**

**Answer:** Manufacturing industries are pivotal in boosting the economy of a nation, rather could be said that industries form the backbone of the nation. These manufacturing industries produce products that are used by everyone including farmers, common people. The manufacturing industry is the sector that generates employment in secondary and tertiary sectors.

**When industries are established in backward regions:**

1. It removes poverty from that region.
2. It brings down regional disparity that was prevalent.
3. The backward region shapes and converts into a developed region.
4. The common public services like roads, schools, hospitals are built which prove useful to the people.

**Q. 3. Name the categories of industries classified on the basis of capital investment.**

**Answer:** The industries are classified on the following basis:

1. On the basis of raw material used.
2. According to the utility of the product.
3. On the basis of the capital investment.
4. According to the ownership of the industries.
5. On the basis of the quantity of raw material used.



On the basis of capital investment: It is the type of industry that is classified according to the capital being invested in the industry.

A small-scale industry has a limit over investment. This limit keeps changing, but at present, the maximum investment allowed in the small-scale industry is 1 crore.

**Q. 4. Which industry is the only self-reliant industry in India?**

**Answer:** A self-reliant industry is one that can process the product itself that is from collecting raw material to producing furnished goods.

The textile industry which is also an Agro-based Industry is the only self-reliant industry in the country. It is complete in the value chain, that is, it is itself engaged in the process ; from raw material to the production of the highest value-added products.

In India, the textile industry occupies 14% of the industrial production and contributes 4% towards GDP.

**Q. 5. Which country is the largest exporter of jute in the world?**

**Answer:** Jute textile industry is an agro-based Industry.

Bangladesh is the largest exporter of Jute in the world. India is placed second in export and first in the production of raw jute and jute goods.

**The factors that facilitate its production are :**

1. The proximity of the Jute production areas.
2. Water availability.
3. Good transportation network.
4. Availability of labour.

As per the factors, West Bengal is a best-suited region for the textile industry, and this is the reason that most of the industries are located in West Bengal.

**Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. What is the raw material in a steel plant?**

**Answer:** The raw materials used in a steel plant are Iron Ore, Coking coal and limestone in the ratio of 4:2:1. A small quantity of manganese is also used.

**Q. 2. How many software technology parks are in India?**

**Answer:** A Software Technology Park is the accumulation of software export units, which aims at encouraging, promoting and boosting the export of software from India.

In 1991 a society named Software Technology Parks of India( STPI) was set up by the Ministry of electronics and IT.

There are 46 STPI across India and major among them are in Bengaluru, Mumbai, Chennai, Hyderabad, and Pune.

**Q. 3. Name the important centres of electronic industry in India.**

**Answer:** Electronic Industry is an important industry that covers a wide range of products including TV, Telephones, cellular Telecom, Computers, etc.

India has emerged globally in this sector. Bengaluru has emerged as the electronic capital of India. There are also other cities that have engaged itself in this sector. They are Mumbai, Delhi, Kolkata, Pune, Chennai, Lucknow, Coimbatore.

**Q. 4. Give a list of major pollution can lay an impact on our lives?**

**Answer:** The major types of pollution are :

**1. Air Pollution:** It occurs when the atmosphere is filled with undesirable gases like Sulphur dioxide and Carbon Monoxide. The particles that settle down in the atmosphere are both solid and liquid-like dust, spays mist, smoke. Air pollution adversely affects health and the environment.

**2. Water Pollution:** When organic and inorganic waste from industries get discharged into the rivers. The industries that increase water pollution are paper, pulp, chemical. textiles and dyeing, petroleum refineries, tanneries, and electroplating industries.

**3. Thermal pollution:** This occurs when the hot water from the plants, factories are drained into rivers and water bodies before cooling down. This scenario has an ill effect upon the aquatic life.

**4. Noise Pollution:** The unwanted loud sound from vehicles, industrial and construction activities etc. creates noise pollution. This affects heart rate, blood pressure, stress, and psychological effects etc.

**Q. 5. What effects noise pollution can lay on our lives?**

**Answer:** The unwanted loud sound from vehicles, industrial and construction activities etc. creates noise pollution. This affects heart rate, blood pressure, stress, and psychological effects etc.

**The effects of noise pollution are :**

1. Increased heart rate.
2. Blood pressure increases.
3. Cause irritation and leads to stress.
4. Physiological effects.

**Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. What factors determine the location of the industry?**

**Answer:** The factors that determine locations of industry are :

1. The proximity of the Jute production areas.
2. Water availability.
3. Good transportation network.
4. Availability of labour.

**Q. 2. Which industry acts as a nodal industry for synthetic textile?**

**Answer:** Petroleum industry acts as a nodal synthetic industry. Some of the main petroleum products that are manufactured for trade with foreign countries are petroleum gases, gas oil, propane, distilled crude oil, naphtha, ethane, and kerosene. The manufacturing industry has benefitted greatly due to this.

**Q. 3. What do you mean by cottage industry?**

**Answer:** Cottage industry is a small-scale industry, where the products are created at homes rather than a factory. Here the labour force is minimum. Example: Weaving, Pottery etc.

**Q. 4. Which rank does India hold in terms of production of steel, chemical, jute, and sugar?**

**Answer:** India is the largest producer of jute, but it is the second largest exporter of jute after Bangladesh.

India is the second largest producer of Sugar in the world.

India is the 4<sup>th</sup> largest producer of crude steel.

India is the 12<sup>th</sup> largest producer of Chemicals in the world and ranks third in Asia.

**Q. 5. Classify industries on the basis of the capital investment.**

**Answer:** The industries are classified on the following basis:

1. On the basis of raw material used.
2. According to the utility of the product.
3. On the basis of the capital investment.
4. According to the ownership of the industries.
5. On the basis of the quantity of raw material used.

**On the basis of capital investment:** It is the type of industry that is classified according to the capital being invested in the industry.

A small-scale industry has a limit over investment. This limit keeps changing, but at present, the maximum investment allowed in the small-scale industry is 1 crore.

**Q. 6. What are the ways of treating industrial effluents?**

**Answer:** To minimize the effects of pollution The hot waters and effluents could be treated before releasing it into the rivers.

**This treatment could be done in 3 phases:**

**1. Primary treatment:** By using mechanical means like screening, grinding, flocculation, and sedimentation. Here the solids are separated from the wastewater stream.

**2. Secondary treatment:** Using the biological process. The dissolved biological matter is progressively converted into a solid mass by using indigenous, water-borne micro-organisms.

**3. Tertiary:** The wastewater is recycled in the tertiary stage.

**Q. 7. The sugar industry is ideally suited for the cooperative sector. Why?**

**Answer:** Sugarcane cultivation is seasonal hence the production too is seasonal. The farmers are engaged in the cultivation of the sugarcane, and when it is reaped, a cluster of farmers set up a mill and produce sugar. So this cooperation among the farmers helps them bear profits and losses together. Hence it is a cooperative sector. The cooperative formation has been successful in Maharashtra.

**Q. 8. Which state is the leading producer of cotton in India?**

**Answer:** Gujrat is the leading producer of cotton in India. In early days the cotton textiles were mainly based in Maharashtra and Gujrat belt. This region provides ideal conditions in terms of sunlight, humidity, soil, etc.

**Q. 9. Name an iron and steel plant of Tamil Nadu.**

**Answer:** India is the fourth largest producer of crude steel. The steel plants are mainly concentrated in Jharkhand and West Bengal region.

Salem Steel Plant is in Tamil Nadu.

**Q. 10. Which industries are responsible for water pollution?**

**Answer:** When organic and inorganic waste from industries get discharged into the rivers, it results in water pollution. The industries that increase water pollution are paper, pulp, chemical, Textiles and dyeing, petroleum refineries, tanneries and electroplating industries. They discharge untreated wastes into a waterbody which eventually hampers the ecological balance of the region.

**Q. 11. How do industries pollute and water?**

**Answer:** When organic and inorganic waste from industries get discharged into the rivers, it results in water pollution. The industries that increase water pollution are paper, pulp, chemical, Textiles and dyeing, petroleum refineries, tanneries and electroplating industries. They discharge untreated wastes into a waterbody which eventually hampers the ecological balance of the region.

When the hot water from the plants, factories are drained into rivers and water bodies before cooling down, it has an ill effect upon the aquatic life.

**Q. 12. Write a short note on the sugar industry.**

**Answer:** Sugar industry is agro-based Industry. India is the second largest producer of Sugar in the world. This industry is seasonal in nature, hence many works in cooperatives.

60% of sugar mills in India is concentrated in Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.

But this industry also faces challenges like the seasonal change. Sugarcane is an annual crop and methods used in the production are old and inefficient. If any stage goes wrong, it results in a huge loss to the farmer.

**Q. 13. Explain three facts about information technology and electronics industry.**

**Answer:** Electronic Industry is an important industry that covers a wide range of products including TV, Telephones, cellular Telecom, Computers, etc.

1. This industry has boosted employment.
2. The office work included in this industry has attracted women, and 30% of the people employed are women.
3. This industry has also boosted the economy. It has been a major player in attracting foreign investments.

India has emerged globally in this sector. Bengaluru has emerged as the electronic capital of India. There are also other cities that have engaged itself in this sector; they are Mumbai, Delhi, Kolkata, Pune, Chennai, Lucknow, Coimbatore.

**Q. 14. Compare the different pattern of development of jute and cotton industry.**

**Answer:** The developments in the jute industry:

1. In 2005 the National Jute policy was formulated to Increase productivity of jute and increase the quality of the produced Jute.
2. The government made the jute packaging mandatory for goods.

**The developments in the cotton industry:**

1. Liberalization and Foreign direct investments have given a stimulus to the industry.

2. Earlier only public enterprises would participate in the industry, but now private entrepreneurs have also plunged into it.
3. As steel products are needed in every other sector too, its demand has increased.

**Q. 15. How can we compete in the international market in manufacturing?**

**Answer:** Efficiency and competitiveness are the keys to compete in the manufacturing sector in this era of globalization.

To boost the economy, it is important to export as well as import the goods; only either way would do not bear profit. To trade in the international market, the quality of the product must be better than others. This requires efficiency in the production sector.

**Q. 16. Explain the objectives of the National Jute Policy 2005.**

**Answer:** In 2005 the National Jute policy was formulated.

**The objectives are:**

1. Increase productivity of jute.
2. Increase the quality of the produced Jute.
3. The Jute farmers must be paid well.
4. To enhance the yield of the Jute.

**Q. 17. How were the cotton textile produced in ancient India?**

**Answer:** The cotton Industry has a long history. In ancient times, cotton was produced with hand spinning and handloom weaving techniques.

Later after the advent of British in 18th-century power looms came into use. This stopped the use of traditional handloom weaving technique.

**Q. 18. Why has the demand for jute products increase internally as well as globally? Explain any two reasons.**

**Answer:** Jute textile industry is an agro-based Industry.

USA, Canada, Russia, UAE, UK, and Australia are the main markets of jute where the demands have increased.

**The main reason behind the increased demands are:**

1. The demands have increased internally because of the norm made by the government on the mandatory packaging of goods with jute.
2. National Jute policy formulated increased the yield of jute production.

**Q. 19. How are integrated steel plant different from mini steel plants? What problem does the industry face? What recent developments have led to a rise in the productions capacity?**

**Answer:** Manganese is mainly used in the manufacturing of Steel. The Iron and steel industries are the basic industry as rest all other industries are dependent on them. Steel is used in the manufacturing of goods, construction material, defence medical, telephonic, scientific and variety of other goods.

An Integrated plant is one that is huge and manufactures everything from getting raw materials to produce the final product whereas mini Steel plants are smaller, have electric furnaces. They produce mild and alloy steel.

**The problems associated with Steel Industry are :**

1. Coking coal has limited availability and is costly.
2. The labour has lower productivity.
3. The industry requires huge energy supply, which is not always available.
4. Poor Infrastructure.

**The developments that have led to a rise in the production capacity are:**

1. Liberalization and Foreign direct investments have given a stimulus to the industry.
2. Earlier only public enterprises would participate in the industry, but now private entrepreneurs have also plunged into it.
3. As steel products are needed in every other sector too, its demand has increased.

**Q. 20. Why are jute mills concentrated along the Hooghly river?**

**Answer:** Jute textile industry is an agro-based Industry.

India is placed second in export and first in the production of raw jute and jute goods.

**The factors that facilitate its production are :**

1. The proximity of the Jute production areas.
2. Inexpensive Water availability.
3. Good transportation network including rail, road, and waterways.
4. Cheap Availability of labour from Bihar, Jharkhand, Orissa etc.

The above factors have led to the concentration of jute mills along the Hooghly river.

As per the factors, West Bengal is the best-suited region for the textile industry, and this is the reason that most of the industries are located in West Bengal.

**Q. 21. “The challenge of sustainable development requires integration of economic development with environmental concern.” Support this statement by giving four measures that can be taken by the industries to protect the environment.**

**Answer:** Though Industrialisation is part of globalization we cannot ignore the harmful effect of it upon the environment is possible.

**The effects could be reduced simultaneously by the Industries:**

1. The industries could minimize water usage and could reuse the water by recycling.
2. Rainwater harvesting to store the rainwater.
3. Treating hot water effluents before discharging into water bodies.
4. Less drawing of groundwater.
5. Fitting smokestacks to factories with an electrostatic precipitator to reduce air pollution.
6. Using oil or gases instead of coal in factories.

**Q. 22. The twin aim of industrial development along with conservation of the environment is not an impossible task. Comment on this statement.**

**Answer:** Though Industrialisation is part of globalization we cannot ignore the harmful effect of it upon the environment is possible.

**The effects of Industrialisation:**

1. The pollutions namely air, water, thermal and Noise pollution are all caused due to industries. Hence, this fact cannot be overlooked and must be worked upon.
2. The pollutions have degraded the atmosphere and have led to global warming.
3. The increasing temperature has led to the melting of glaciers and rising sea level.
4. The health hazards have started deteriorating human capital.
5. Contaminated water has produced many deathly viruses.

**The effects could be reduced simultaneously by the Industries:**

1. The industries could minimize water usage and could reuse the water by recycling.
2. Rainwater harvesting to store the rainwater.
3. Treating hot water effluents before discharging into water bodies.
4. Less drawing of groundwater.



5. Fitting smokestacks to factories with an electrostatic precipitator to reduce air pollution.

6. Using oil or gases instead of coal in factories.

The above methods could be brought into practice in order to save the atmosphere from depleting and the environment from degradation.

**Q. 23. "India is important to iron and steel producing country in the world yet, we are not able to perform our full potential. Comment on this statement.**

**Answer:** India is the 4th largest producer of crude steel in the world.

**The challenges faced by this industry are :**

1. Coking coal has limited availability and also is costly.
2. The labour has lower productivity.
3. Since the industry requires huge energy supply, which could not be available.
4. Poor Infrastructure of the industries and factories.

Though the steels are produced and imported from other countries too, yet the production is not sufficient to meet the domestic demand.

To address this, there is a need of Steel policy similar to that of National Jute policy and work accordingly to increase the yield.

**Q. 24. Why is it important for us to improve our weaving sector instead of exporting yarn in large quantities?**

**Answer:** In ancient times the handloom weaving method was used to produce cotton textiles. Even now it is used, but it needs to be improved and more mechanized. The yarn is a raw material which is exported to other countries. These countries process it and produce high-quality clothes which gets them huge profits. This is most of the times imported by us which affects the economy negatively.

We need to develop the weaving industry so as to process this domestically and then export the finished product for larger gains.

**Q. 25. Explain any four problems faced by cotton textile industries in India.**

**Answer:** The Cotton textile industry is agro-based Industry and provides living to many farmers, cotton ball pluckers and workers.

**The factors that responsible for its localization are :**

1. Availability of raw cotton.
2. Transportation facility.

3. Availability of labour.
4. Moist climate for cultivating cotton.

In India. Gujrat and Maharashtra region has most of the cotton industries.

**Challenges faced :**

1. There is strong competition in the synthetic fibre industry.
2. Though India is the largest producer of cotton yarn, yet most of the cotton products are still imported.
3. The power looms are run on electricity; this gets deterred by the fluctuating and erratic power supply.
4. The machinery used is traditional and need to be upgraded in order to increase the yield.
5. The low output of labour is also one challenge. This could be addressed by making the labourers efficient.

# Lifelines of National Economy

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Which organisation is responsible for implementation of the Golden Quadrilateral Highway project?**

**Answer:** The Indian government launched a project to connect Delhi-Kolkata-Chennai-Mumbai by six-lane superhighways. The objective behind the making of these superhighways is to reduce the time and distance between the megacities of India. This project of superhighways is being implemented by the National Highway Authority of India (NHAI).

**Q. 2. National Highway-2 (NH-2) connects which two places?**

**Answer:** NH-2 is now numbered as NH-19. It connects Delhi and Kolkata, also connecting major cities such as Faridabad, Mathura, Agra, Kanpur, Allahabad, Varanasi, Dhanbad and Asansol.

**Q. 3. Border road organisation (BRO) was established in which year?**

**Answer:** Border Roads Organisation is an undertaking of Government of India which constructs and maintains the roads in the bordering areas of the country. It was established in 1960 for the development of roads in terms of strategic importance.

**Q. 4. Into how many zones is Indian Railway divided?**

**Answer:** Railways are one of the principal modes of transport in India. They take the largest public undertaking in the country. Indian railways are now divided into 16 zones.

**Q. 5. Railway in India has been in existence from which year?**

**Answer:** The first train ran from Mumbai to Thane in 1853 covering a distance of 34 km. Indian railway runs on multiple Gauge operations which include 1) Broad gauge 2) Narrow gauge and 3) Metre gauge.

## Check Point 02

**Q. 1. List the products that are transported through pipelines.**

**Answer:** This is a new mode of transport. Pipelines were used in the past to send water to cities and industries. Nowadays crude oil, petroleum products and natural gas are also sent from oil and natural gas fields to refineries, fertilizer factories and big thermal power plants.

**Q. 2. Which is the cheapest means of transport?**

**Answer:** Waterways are known to be the cheapest means of transport in India. It is fuel- efficient and environment-friendly. Waterways make it easy to carry heavy and bulky goods.

**Q. 3. How much is the length of the navigable inland waterway in India?**

**Answer:** India has an inland navigation waterway of 14,500 km in length, out of which 5685 km is navigable by machined vessels. Inland water transport is an economical.

**Q. 4. Which is the riverine port of India?**

**Answer:** Kolkata is an inland riverine port, and it serves the large land of Ganga-Brahmaputra basin. As it is a tidal port, it requires constant dredging of Hooghly.

**Q. 5. Air transport was nationalised in which year?**

**Answer:** Air transport is one the fastest and comfortable mode of transport today. It was difficult to reach the north-eastern parts of the country due to dense forests and big rivers; air travel helped to reach these places easier. Air transport was nationalised in the year 1953.

### **Check Point 03**

**Q. 1. Enlist various channels to introduce by Department of the post for quick delivery of mails.**

**Answer:** Indian postal network is the largest in the world. In order to deliver mails quickly to cities and large towns, six mail channels have been introduced recently. They are:

- 1) Rajdhani channel
- 2) Metro channel
- 3) Green channel
- 4) Business channel
- 5) Bulk mail channel
- 6) Periodical channel

**Q. 2. Which is the national television channel of India?**

**Answer:** Doordarshan is the national television channel of India. It is one of the largest terrestrial networks in the world. It broadcasts various types of programs which include a program for entertainment, educational purpose, program for sports etc.

**Q. 3. Name the authority that certifies films in India?**

**Answer:** India is the largest producer of feature films in the world. Short films, video feature films and video short films are the various categories of films produced. The Central Board of Film certification certifies both Indian and foreign films in India.

**Q. 4. What are the components of trade?**

**Answer:** Export and import are the components of trade. Difference between export and import gives the trade balance of a country. Exports greater than imports result in a positive balance of trade and vice versa.

**Q. 5. Which states form an important destination for foreign tourist in India?**

**Answer:** Some of the important states that form an important destination in India are:

- a) Delhi
- b) Rajasthan
- c) Kerala
- d) Gujrat
- e) Assam

They are most famous for historical monuments, forts, mountains, rivers, etc.

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. Which is the Northernmost terminal of the north-south corridor?**

**Answer:** A project launched by the Indian government to link the major cities by six-lane superhighways. The north-south corridor link Jammu and Kashmir (Srinagar) and Tamil Nadu (Kanyakumari).

**Q. 2. How will you define the riverine port?**

**Answer:** Port located on the riverfront is known as a riverine port. Kolkata is an inland riverine port. It serves the very large Ganga-Brahmaputra basin.

**Q. 3. What is the length of coastline of India?**

**Answer:** The length of the coastline of India is 7,516.6 km. India has 12 major and 187 minor ports. Among the states, Gujarat has the longest coastline of 1915 km.

**Q. 4. Which is the riverine port on the Eastern coast of India?**

**Answer:** The east coast canal with the stretches of Brahmani river along with Matai river and delta channels of Mahanadi river are the riverine ports on the Eastern coast of India.

**Q. 5. Where is the headquarters of Eastern railway zone located?**

**Answer:** Indian railway is divided into sixteen zones. One of them is eastern railways. The headquarters of the eastern railway is situated in Fairley Palace in Kolkata which has four sub-divisions: Howrah, Malda, Sealdah and Asansol.

**Q. 6. Name the authority envisaged with the task of implementation of super Highways?**

**Answer:** Government of India launched the road development project to link the major cities in India by making the six-lane super highways. The objective to make these highways is to reduce the time for transport. National Highway Authority of India (NHAI) has been given the responsibility to implement this project.

**Q. 7. Which is the most important mode of transport in India?**

**Answer:** Roadways are the most important means of transport because a) construction cost of roads is much less than that of railway lines b) roads can traverse comparatively more dissected and undulating topography c) roads can traverse higher gradients d) road transportation is economical in transportation of few persons and relatively smaller amount of goods over short distances e) it also provides door-to-door service f) road transport is used as a feeder to other modes of transport.

**Q. 8. Name the state where Haldia port is located.**

**Answer:** Kolkata is an inland riverine port which serves the large port of Ganga-Brahmaputra basin. A subsidiary port known as Haldia was developed in order to relieve growing pressure on Kolkata port.

**Q. 9. When and why was Border Road Organisation (BRO) created?**

**Answer:** BRO which is under the Government of India constructs and maintains roads in the bordering area of the country. For the strategic development of roads, it was established in 1960. They had improved accessibility in difficult terrain and helped in the economic development of this area.

**Q. 10. What is the objective of Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Yojna?**

**Answer:** This facility was started by the late by-then prime minister of India Atal Behari Vajpayee in the year 2000. Its objective was to provide good connectivity of roads between villages that were unconnected.

**Q. 11. Name any two iron-ore exporting ports of India.**

**Answer:** The two ports exporting iron in India are the Marmagao port (Goa) and New Mangalore port. Marmagao port exports about fifty per cent of iron ore export goods. New Mangalore Port in Karnataka caters to the export of iron ore concentrates from Kudremukh mines.

**Q. 12. Where are railways developed in hilly areas and why? Trace their history in the colonial period.**

**Answer:** Railway tracts are laid through low hills, gaps or tunnels in the hilly terrains of peninsular region. In the places such as Himalayan regions, it is not favourable to construct railway lines. In the past, it was difficult to lay railway lines in deserts of Rajasthan, swamps of Gujarat and forest areas of Madhya Pradesh. Recently, the development of Konkan railways in the west coast has facilitated the movement of passengers and goods in this most economic region of India.

**Q. 13. Why are border roads important for us?**

**Answer:** Border Road Organisation (BRO) which is an organisation working under the Government of India constructs and maintains the roads in the bordering areas of the country. It was established in 1960 for the development of the roads of strategic importance. They had improved accessibility in the difficult terrain areas and helped in the economic development of this area.

**Q. 14. Explain why road transport still needs to be developed in India. What are the priority areas?**

**Answer:** Road transportation in India faces several problems. Increasing traffic and passengers is making road transport inadequate for use. About half of the roads are unmetalled, and this limits their usage during the rainy season. Also, the national highways are inadequate. The roadways in the cities are highly congested, and bridges and culverts are old and narrow. Priority areas are the roadways that connect cities and towns, and within the cities, it is the bridges as they have become old.

**Q. 15. Why is favourable Balance of Trade desired for an economy?**

**Answer:** The difference between export and import gives the balance of trade of a country. If the export quantity exceeds the import quantity, then the trade balance is said to be favourable, and if import quantity exceeds the export quantity, then it is unfavourable trade balance. Favourable trade balance in a country is desired for an economy as it increases the economic growth rate of the country. More export leads to more incoming of foreign exchange which helps in filling the deficit in the longer run.

**Q. 16. Why is tourism called invisible trade?**

**Answer:** Tourism doesn't involve the exchange of goods. There is no physical transport of goods in the tourism industry. Tourists buy services at hotels, restaurants, etc. and there is the transport of intangible services. Thus, tourism is called invisible trade.

**Q. 17. How will you differentiate between broad gauge and narrow gauge?**

**Answer:** Indian railway runs on multiple gauge operations, i.e. broad gauge, metre gauge and narrow gauge. Broad gauge and narrow gauge can be differentiated based on their measurements and the distance they can be used to travel. Broad gauge is 1.676 metres, and the narrow gauge is 0.762 and 0.610. Running track in broad gauge is 77,347 km, and in narrow gauge, it is 2474 km.

**Q. 18. What is the importance of railway transport? Describe any three major problems faced by Indian Railways.**

**Answer:** Importance of railway transportation:

- a) It is the important mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India.
- b) The railway does multipurpose activities like business, sightseeing, pilgrimage along with transportation of goods over long distances.
- c) Railways have also been an integrating force for 150 years.
- d) They bind the economy of the country and accelerate the development of agriculture and industry.

Thefts, causing damage to the railway property and passengers travelling without tickets are some problems that Indian railway faces.

**Q. 19. Describe any four features of Indian tourism as a trade.**

**Answer:** The tourism in India has grown in the past three decades.

- a) People from other countries visit India to see historical places. This has increased the foreign exchange in our country.
- b) Tourism also promotes national integration, provides support to local handicrafts and cultural pursuits.
- c) Helps in spreading knowledge about our culture throughout the world.

**Q. 20. What is the importance of waterways in India?**

**Answer:** a) Waterways are the cheapest means of transport and are most suitable to carry heavy and bulky goods.

- b) It is a fuel-efficient and environment-friendly mode of transport.
- c) India has inland navigation waterways of 14,500 km in length.
- d) There are some major seaports which help in the transportation of goods from and to various countries.
- e) Also, there are riverine ports for passengers to travel and to transport goods within India.

**Q. 21. “ Intensive utilisation of railway track is need of the hour.” Justify this statement.**

**Answer:** Growth in population has led to the increase in transport traffic in railways. Also, there is an increase in the transport goods from one place to another. Due to these reasons, the utilisation of railway track has been increased. The statement given



above justifies the need for the maintenance of tracts as its utilisation has been increased.

**Q. 22. Explain why road transport still needs to be developed in India. What are the priority areas?**

**Answer:** Road transportation in India faces several problems. Increasing traffic and passengers are making road transport inadequate for use. About half of the roads are unmetalled, and this limits their usage during the rainy season. Also, the national highways are inadequate. The roadways in the cities are highly congested, and bridges and culverts are old and narrow. Priority areas are the roadways that connect cities and towns, and within the cities, it is the bridges as they have become old.

# Civics

<b>Chapter name</b>	<b>Pg.No.</b>
<b>Power Sharing</b>	<b>131</b>
<b>Federalism</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>Democracy and Diversity</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>Gender,Religion and Caste</b>	<b>158</b>
<b>Political Parties</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>Outcomes of Democracy</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>Challenges to Democracy</b>	<b>183</b>

# Power Sharing

---

## Check Point 01

### Q. 1. Which minority community is relatively rich and powerful in Belgium?

**Answer:** Belgium, a small country in Europe with a population over one crore has a very complex ethnicity. About 59% of its population speaks Dutch, and 40% speaks French, and 1% speaks German.

French community though in the minority yet is rich and powerful in Germany.

### Q. 2. Name two sub-group of Tamils residing in Sri Lanka.

**Answer:** Sri Lanka is an island nation, south of India. It got independence in 1948. It has a diverse population like most of the South Asian nations.

The population in the majority is Sinhala speakers, with about 74% and rest are Tamil Speakers.

**The Tamil speaking people have got two subgroups:**

- a. Sri Lankan Tamils: The natives of Sri Lanka.
- b. Indian Tamils: Their forefathers came to Sri Lanka as planters.

### Q. 3. In which region does the Dutch constitute as a majority and minority?

**Answer:** Belgium a nation in Europe with complex ethnicity has two community in majority one is a Dutch-speaking community with over 59% population, and they lives in Flemish region, and another 40 % population speaks French and lives in Wallonia region, and the rest 1 % speaks German.

The capital of Belgium, Brussels, the community in the majority here is French with 80% population while rest is Dutch.

### Q. 4. What type of governments prevails in Belgium?

**Answer:** Belgium has complex ethnicity because two communities German and Dutch-speaking respectively form the majority of the population.

- According to its Constitution, the Dutch and the French-speaking minister should be an equal number in the central government. Hence no single community can make the decision unilaterally.
- Some of the powers of the central government are transferred to the State government. Hence the state government is not the subordinate of the central government.

- Brussels, the capital of Belgium, has its government where both the Dutch and French community have equal representation.
- There is a community government, which is elected by anyone community among Dutch, French, and German. They look after cultural, educational and language related issues.

## **Check Point 02**

### **Q. 1. What are federal governments?**

**Answer:** The country where powers are shared by the governments at different levels, i.e. provincial or regional level, is called Federal government.

Example: India has a federal form of government. It has two governments, i.e. one at the center and another at subsequent units, i.e. States called as Central and State government respectively.

### **Q. 2. What is a legitimate government?**

**Answer:** A legitimate Government is one that is accepted by all the citizens, meaning a law/authority has widespread acceptance.

It is a widespread acceptance of the governing authority by the public, and the governing regime has political power through consent and mutual understanding.

A legitimate government establishes stability, as it provides reasons for the regime to exists.

The election, which is significant for democracy is also an essential process of legitimization.

### **Q. 3. What is the source of political power in a democracy?**

**Answer:** A democracy is where people elect their representative or leader. The sources of political power in a Democracy are:

**a. People:** The citizens are the ultimate power, as the collective votes of the people decide the ruling authority of the nation. A political party or leader comes into power only when he/she gets elected by the majority of the people.

**b. The political parties:** It is an organized group with a specific agenda. There are several parties, and each has political competition among them to attain power. Such competitions are important as it makes sure that power does not remain in just one hand.

**c. Pressure groups:** It is a group of people who defend a common agenda, these groups try to bring change in the policies by exerting pressure on the government. There are many pressure groups in India some being RSS, Bajrang Dal, Narmada Bachao Aandolan, etc.

#### **Q. 4. How does the power-sharing occur in the community governments?**

**Answer:** Apart from Power Sharing between Centre and State, there is also a Power Sharing in the Community governments. These Community could be any, based on linguistic or religious groups.

In our Parliament seats are reserved for women and socially backward community, in the constituencies, to give these community space to represent themselves. This type of arrangement is made to give the minority communities a fair share in the power.

**Example:** In Belgium, There is a communist government, which is elected by any one community among Dutch, French, and German. They look after cultural, educational and language related issues.

### **Self Assessment**

#### **Q. 1. What is a civil war?**

**Answer:** A Civil war is a war that is fought between the different groups of the same region or nation, sometimes situation get so intense that takes the form of actual war.

**Example:** When Sri Lanka recognized Sinhala as the only official language it disregarded Tamils. They felt that they were denied equality. As a result, the relationship between the Sinhala and the Tamils strained and the Sri Lankan Tamils launched movements against the government. This distrust took the shape of Civil war, thousands of people were killed.

#### **Q. 2. Which type of distribution of power sharing is called a system of check and balances?**

**Answer:** In a democracy, though power is assigned to the ministers yet they are accountable to the Parliament. Their actions are judged or checked at every instance.

**Example:** In our country, though power is divided amongst Executive, Legislature and Judiciary yet they are interlinked. A law made by the legislature can be checked by the Judiciary if it goes against the principle of the Constitution. This maintains a balance in the country. This arrangement is called checks and balances.

#### **Q. 3. What is a reserved constituency?**

**Answer:** In our Parliament seats are reserved for women and socially backward community, in the constituencies, to give these community space to represent themselves. This type of arrangement is made to give the minority communities a fair share in the power. This is called a reserved constituency.

#### **Q. 4. Who are the Indian Tamil in Sri Lanka?**

**Answer:** Sri Lanka is an island nation, south of India. It got independence in 1948. It has a diverse population like most of the South Asian nations.

The Tamil speaking people have got two subgroups one is Sri Lankan Tamils who are the natives of Sri Lanka, and another is Indian Tamils whose forefathers came to Sri Lanka as planters during the colonial period.

**Q. 5. What is the percentage of German speaking people in Belgium?**

**Answer:** Belgium is a nation in Europe with complex ethnicity. It has two community in majority, one is a Dutch-speaking community with over 59% population, and they live in Flemish region, and another 40 % population speaks French and lives in Wallonia region, and the rest 1 % speaks German.

**Q. 6. What is the state religion of Sri Lanka?**

**Answer:** In 1948 when Sri Lanka got independence, Sinhala was established as a supreme religion. Later in 1956 Sinhala was declared an official language.

Later when the new constitution was framed, it stipulated Buddhism as a supreme community. At present, Theravada Buddhism is a dominant religion of Sri Lanka with 70% population. Most of the Buddhists speak Sinhala.

**Q. 7. What is the percentage of the Christian population in Sri Lanka?**

**Answer:** Sri Lanka is an island nation, south of India. It has a diverse population like most of the South Asian nations. The population in the majority is Sinhala speakers, with about 74% and rest are Tamil Speakers. The 7% of the population are Christians who speak both Tamil and Sinhala.

**Q. 8. What was LTTE?**

**Answer:** LTTE is Liberation Tigers of Tamil Eelam, it was a militant organization of Sri Lanka. The main aim of the organization was the formation of the independent state of Tamil Eelam in Sri Lanka. The militant created insurgency situation in the country which later took the form of Sri Lankan Civil wars but eventually, it got defeated.

**Q. 9. Who was responsible for the formation of LTTE in Sri Lanka?**

**Answer:** LTTE, i.e. is Liberation Tigers of Tamil Eelam, was established in 1976 by Velupillai Prabhakaran. The main aim of the organization was the formation of the independent state of Tamil Eelam in Sri Lanka. It was a militant organization that got itself engaged in illegal activities. The assassination of former Prime Minister Rajiv Gandhi was planned by LTTE. In 2009 LTTE came to an end and eventually got defeated.

**Q. 10. What is the percentage of Indian Tamil in the overall Sri Lankan population?**

**Answer:** The Tamil speaking people have got two subgroups one is Sri Lankan Tamils who are the natives of Sri Lanka, and another is Indian Tamils whose forefathers came to Sri Lanka as planters during the colonial period.

There are 18% Tamil Speakers, among them, 13% are Sri Lankan Tamils and rest 5% are Indian Tamils.

**Q. 11. What is the meaning of Tamil Eelam?**

**Answer:** Eelam means State, so Tamil Eelam means Tamil State. The Sri Lankan Tamils wanted recognition of Tamil as official Language, but the government denied their demands. They organized several parties and groups demanding the formation of the new state in northern Sri Lanka, as Tamil Eelam.

**Q. 12. What is the difference between prudential and moral reasons for power sharing?**

**Answer:** Power Sharing or distribution of power is desirable for a nation because arranging or distributing the powers among social or religious groups reduces the occurrence of conflict in the nation. By sharing power, a nation ensures that stability and political order is maintained. This is prudential as it states that by sharing power there is the possibility of better outcomes.

Power sharing is important also because, in a democracy the people have the right to be consulted about the governance, so this right is established by power sharing. This is a moral reason as it states the values of power sharing.

**Q. 13. What do you understand by the term power sharing? Explain.**

**Answer:** Power sharing is distribution or arrangement of powers between groups or states of a nation. Almost every nation has various ethnicity; there are various religious and linguistic groups. So by arranging or distributing the powers among these groups reduces the occurrence of conflict in the nation. By sharing power, a nation ensures that stability and political order is maintained.

**Q. 14. Is Flemish language used in Belgium as a separate language? Why?**

**Answer:** Flemish is a language that is related to Dutch dialect and is spoken in the northern part of Belgium. Yes, it is used as a separate language to reduce the conflict between the French and Dutch-speaking community.

Belgium has complex ethnicity because two communities, German and Dutch-speaking respectively form the majority of the population.

According to its Constitution, the Dutch and the French-speaking minister should be an equal number in the central government. Hence no single community can make the decision unilaterally.

**Q. 15. What values does power-sharing exhibit in a country?**

**Answer:** Power sharing is distribution or arrangement of powers between groups or states of a nation. Power sharing is the characteristic of good governance. Sharing of power helps in well-functioning of democracy.

In a democratic nation, power sharing is more significant, because in a democracy the people have the right to be consulted about the governance. This states the values of power sharing.

**Q. 16. What were the two main causes of resentment in Belgium in 1960? How was the conflict solved?**

**Answer:** Belgium a nation in Europe with complex ethnicity has two community in majority one is a Dutch-speaking community with over 59% population, and they lives in Flemish region, and another 40 % population speaks French and lives in Wallonia region, and the rest 1 % speaks German. The capital of Belgium is Brussels, the community in the majority here is French with 80% population while rest is Dutch

**The two main causes of resentment were:**

**(a)** The French community that was in minority were rich and powerful compared to the Dutch who were in majority because the Dutch got the benefits of education much later than the French.

**(b)** Although the Dutch were in the majority in the country, they were in the minority in capital, i.e. Brussels.

**The conflict was solved as follows:**

- According to its Constitution, the Dutch and the French-speaking minister should be an equal number in the central government. Hence no single community can make the decision unilaterally.
- Some of the powers of the central government are transferred to the State government. Hence the state government is not the subordinate of the central government.
- Brussels, the capital of Belgium, has its government where both the Dutch and French community have equal representation.

**Q. 17. Why is power sharing desirable? Give any three prudential reasons.**

**Answer:** Power sharing is distribution or arrangement of powers between groups or states of a nation.

**Power is important because:**

**a.** Almost every nation has various ethnicity; there are various religious and linguistic groups. So by arranging or distributing the powers among these groups reduces the occurrence of conflict in the nation. By sharing power, a nation ensures that stability and political order is maintained.

**b.** In a democratic nation, power sharing is more significant, because in a democracy the people have the right to be consulted about the governance.



**Example:** In our Parliament seats are reserved for women and socially backward community, in the constituencies, to give these community space to represent themselves. This type of arrangement is made to give the minority communities a fair share in the power.

Brussels, the capital of Belgium, has its government where both the Dutch and French community have equal representation.

There is a community government, which is elected by anyone community among Dutch, French, and German. They look after cultural, educational and language related issues.

There is a community government, which is elected by anyone community among Dutch, French, and German. They look after cultural, educational and language related issues.

**Q. 18. Explain the significance of 'Democracy' in details.**

**Answer:** Democracy is a form of government where the rulers get elected by the people. A democratic form of government is run by the elected representatives of the common people. Hence, public opinion is the essence of democracy. Such a form of government ensures good opportunity for the overall growth and well-being of its citizens

**The significance of Democracy are:**

- a.** The citizen of the nation comes first. Any policy is made by keeping the interest of people in mind. The authority of a nation is chosen by the people; this makes the citizen basis of democracy.
- b.** In a democracy, a leader/authority or political party are accountable to the citizens for their action; this deters them from wrongdoings. As doing so would remove them from the authority. There is pressure upon the leaders to do good work to retain the position.
- c.** Public's voice is not suppressed. In a democracy, people have the right to agitate against the government if the laws/policies are not made in the welfare of the nation.
- d.** In a democracy, all the citizens are treated equally; there is no discrimination by caste, creed, race, sex.

**Q. 19. What impact would lack 'Power-sharing' have on the country?**

**Answer:** Power sharing is the characteristic of good governance. Sharing of power helps in well-functioning of democracy.

- a.** Lack of Power Sharing increases the chances of confliction and creates instability in the nation, as every community do not get treated equally, this establishes a feeling of resentment.

**b.** Lack of power-sharing reduces the efficiency of the government, as there are no checks and balances. The accountability of the authority gets reduced.

**c.** Lack of Power Sharing affects the right of people to get consulted by the authority.

**Example:** When Sri Lanka recognized Sinhala as the only official language it disregarded Tamils. They felt that they were denied equality. As a result, the relationship between the Sinhala and the Tamils strained and the Sri Lankan Tamils launched movements against the government. This distrust took the shape of Civil war, thousands of people were killed.

**Q. 20. What arrangements were worked out by the Belgium leaders to an accommodate regional difference and cultural diversities?**

**Answer:** Belgium has complex ethnicity because two communities German and Dutch-speaking respectively form the majority of the population.

- According to its Constitution, the Dutch and the French-speaking minister should be an equal number in the central government. Hence no single community can make the decision unilaterally.
- Some of the powers of the central government are transferred to the State government. Hence the state government is not the subordinate of the central government.
- Brussels, the capital of Belgium, has its government where both the Dutch and French community have been given equal representation.
- There is a community government, which is elected by anyone community among Dutch, French, and German. They look after cultural, educational and language related issues.

# Federalism

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. In federalism, different tiers of government have their own jurisdiction, mention areas regarding which they have their own jurisdiction.**

**Answer:** Federalism is a form of governance which revolves around power sharing between a general government at the centre (federal government) with regional governments (provincial, state, cantonal, territorial or other sub-unit governments) in a single political system. And the tenets of this power sharing is usually outlined in the constitution. The different tiers govern the same people, but each has their own jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation, and administration as mandated by the constitution.

**Q. 2. What determines the extent of sharing of power between the Union and the State Government?**

**Answer:** In any federation, the Constitution determines the extent of sharing of power between the Union and the State Governments. For e.g. in Brazil, The Constitution of the Federative Republic of Brazil determines the extent of power-sharing between its 27 federative units including the federal district. In India, the Seventh Schedule of the Indian Constitution delimits the subjects of each level of governmental jurisdiction, dividing them into three lists, namely, The Union List outlining the jurisdiction for the Union Government. The State List, outlining the jurisdiction for the State Government and the Concurrent List, outlining subjects on which both the State and the Union have jurisdiction to make laws.

**Q. 3. Suggest two keys features of federalism.**

**Answer:** The two key features of federalism are:

- (i) There are two or more levels of government and the governments at different levels should agree to some rules of power sharing.
- (ii) They should also trust that each would abide by its part of the agreement. The constitutionally granted powers of jurisdiction are thus unable to be changed by any single level. They require the consent of all government levels.

An ideal federal system has both aspects: mutual trust and agreement to live together.

**Q. 4. What do you mean by concurrent list?**

**Answer:** The Concurrent List includes the subjects on which both the Union Government as well as the State Government have jurisdiction. This includes subjects such as education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption and succession. In case of

the conflict regarding the laws on subjects of the Concurrent List between the State and the Union government, the law made by the Union Government prevails.

## **Check Point 02**

### **Q. 1. When did the era of Coalitions Government start in India?**

**Answer:** The era of the Coalitions Government started in India in 1990. This period saw the rise of several regional political parties in the states of the country. Since no political party got an outright majority in Lok Sabha, the major political parties had to form alliances with the regional parties to form a government at the Centre.

### **Q. 2. Which incident was regarded as a major test for democratic politics in our country after independence?**

**Answer:** A major test for democratic politics in our country after independence was the creation of linguistic States. In 1947, several old states had their boundaries restructured to create new states and these boundaries were drawn based on linguistic preferences. This was done to enable people speaking the same language to reside in one state. This incident is considered a major test because several national leaders feared that this would ultimately lead to a breakdown of democracy in India. But experience has shown that this has led to more unity in the country along with the easier administration.

### **Q. 3. How Many scheduled languages are recognised in India?**

**Answer:** The Census of India in 1991, found 114 major Languages in India. Of these 22 languages are included in the Eighth Schedule of the Indian Constitution and are therefore called 'Scheduled Languages'. The following are the Scheduled Languages – Assamese, Bengali, Bodo, Dogri, Gujarati, Hindi, Kannada, Kashmiri, Konkani, Maithili, Malayalam, Manipuri, Marathi, Nepali, Oriya, Punjabi, Sanskrit, Santhali, Sindhi, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu.

### **Q. 4. Is there any national language in India?**

**Answer:** India does not have any national language and this was done to ensure the protection of the other languages. India does have an official language. As per Article 343 of the Constitution of India, India's official languages shall be Standard Hindi (the dialect known as khadi boli) written in the Devanagari script and English. These are the official languages of India at the Central Government level.

## **Check Point 03**

### **Q. 1. How many seats are reserved for women in Local Government?**

**Answer:** As per the Women Reservation Bill or the Constitution Bill, 2008, the Constitution of India provides a reservation of 33% of all seats in all local bodies

including Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha for women. This Bill was the 108 Amendment when passed and is now a lapsed Bill.

**Q. 2. Define the role of Gram Sabha in rural local government.**

**Answer:** A meeting of all the adults living within the area covered by a Panchayat is called a Gram Sabha. It constitutes of any adult (18 years or more) living within the panchayat area. This meeting which is held two to four times a year is an example of local participation in the decision-making process. The meeting allows local people to discuss topics related to local governance and local development. This in turns influences the Panchayat to implement development programs which are mandated, supervised and monitored by the Gram Sabha. This establishes the overarching influence of the Gram Sabha on the Panchayat. The Gram Sabha also needs to provide its consent regarding the decisions of the Panchayat. The decisions taken by the Gram Sabha can only be annulled by the same members of the Gram Sabha.

**Q. 3. Porto Alegre is a popular city of which country?**

**Answer:** Porto Alegre is a popular city in the country of Brazil. The official year for the city's foundation is 1772. It has hosted the World Social Forum along with the FIFA World Cup. But its real fame lies because of a government experimentation that was carried out here. It adopted the system of popular participation in the definition of public investment. This process in public administration is called the Participatory Budget.

**Q. 4. What political and government set up has been organised by the city Porto Alegre?**

**Answer:** The city of Porto Alegre in Brazil has adopted the system of popular participation in the definition of public investment. It has successfully combined decentralization with participative democracy. This process in public administration is called the Participatory Budget. Participatory budgeting is a process of democratic deliberation and decision-making, in which ordinary people decide how to allocate part of a municipal or public budget. Participatory budgeting allows citizens to identify, discuss, and prioritize public spending projects, and gives them the power to make real decisions about how money is spent. The first full participatory budgeting process was developed in the city starting in 1989. Participatory budgeting in its most meaningful form took place in the city from 1991 to 2004.

## **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. Which country has carried out an extraordinary experiment that combines both, decentralisation and participative democracy?**

**Answer:** Brazil has carried out an extraordinary experiment that combines both, decentralisation and participative democracy. A city called Porto Alegre in Brazil has adopted the system of popular participation in the definition of public investment. This process in public administration is called the Participatory Budget.

**Q. 2. Under the federal system in India, which subject come under the state list?**

**Answer:** The State List or List II has 61 items listed under it and belongs to Schedule Seven in the Constitution of India. These items range from public order, police, trade, and commerce within the state, agriculture, several taxes, elections to state legislatures etc. The respective state governments have exclusive power to legislate on matters relating to these items.

**Q. 3. For which list, both the central and state Government can make laws?**

**Answer:** The Concurrent List or List III of the Seventh Schedule of the Indian Constitution lists 52 items on which both the central and state government can make laws. These items include criminal law, forests, adulteration, civil procedure, etc. The Concurrent List includes the subjects on which both the Union Government as well as the State Government have jurisdiction. In case of the conflict regarding the laws on subjects of the Concurrent List between the State and the Union government, the law made by the Union Government prevails.

**Q. 4. How is rural Local Government popularly known as?**

**Answer:** Rural local government is popularly known as the Panchayati Raj System in India. It was introduced by a constitutional amendment in 1992, although it is based upon the traditional panchayat system of South Asia. It was established to practice a more decentralised form of governance. It consists of three levels – Gram Panchayats at the village level, Panchayat Samiti at the Block level, and the Zila Parishad at the district level. This system exists in all states and union territories except for Nagaland, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Delhi. The funding for the panchayats is received from the Central and State Finance Commissions as well as centrally sponsored schemes. The system provides for the essential services and facilities to the rural population.

**Q. 5. which state in India has a special status?**

**Answer:** The special category status was historically granted to certain regions in India which had been at a disadvantage with respect to other parts of the country. This concept was first introduced in 1969 during the Fifth Finance Commission and initially included Assam, Nagaland and Jammu & Kashmir. Since then, eight more states have been included namely, Arunachal Pradesh, Himachal Pradesh, Manipur, Meghalaya, Mizoram, Sikkim, Tripura, and Uttarakhand.

**Q. 6. Name the Union Territories of India.**

**Answer:** India has seven union territories ruled directly by the central government and are as follows – Chandigarh, Dadra and Nagar Haveli, Daman and Diu, Lakshadweep, Puducherry, Andaman and Nicobar Islands and the National Capital Territory of Delhi.

**Q. 7. Which government deals with the subject in the Union List?**

**Answer:** The Union List or List I of the Seventh Schedule of the Constitution of India lists 100 subjects over which the Parliament and by association, the central government has exclusive power to legislate. It includes subjects like the defence matters of India, Industries, citizenship, banking etc.

**Q. 8. Australia is an example of which type of federation?**

**Answer:** Australia is an example of 'coming-together' federation. This type of federation involves independent states coming together on their own to form a bigger unit so that by pooling sovereignty and retaining identity, they can increase their security.

**Q. 9. Explain the difference between a federal form of government and a unitary one.**

**Answer:** Federalism is a form of governance which revolves around power sharing between a general government at the centre (federal government) with regional governments (provincial, state, cantonal, territorial or other sub-unit governments) in a single political system. The USA is an example of the federal government.

In a system where the central government is supreme and has authority over the decision making for all subordinate local governments is called a Unitary Government. The United Kingdom overseeing Scotland is an example of this type of governance.

Thus for a unitary government, all powers lie with the central government, but in the federal government, the power is divided between two tiers of the government at the federal and local level that connects to the national government.

**Q. 10. Explain how federal power-sharing in India has become more effective than in the early years after the Constitution came into force.**

**Answer:** In the early years India although a federation was in general ruled by one major party both at the Centre and at the state levels. States ruled by rival parties were often ignored by the Centre in favour of those states ruled by the political party at the Centre exhibiting a clear misuse of power by the central government. The era of the Coalitions Government started in India in 1990. This period saw the rise of several regional political parties in the states of the country. Since no political party got an outright majority in Lok Sabha, the major political parties had to form alliances with the regional parties to form a government at the Centre. This, in turn, led to a new culture of power-sharing and respect for the autonomy of state governments. The Supreme Court also passed judgments that made it difficult for the Central Government to dismiss the views and concerns of any State Government in an arbitrary fashion. Thus, federal power-sharing in India has become more effective than in early years after the Constitution came into force mainly due to Coalitions Government and the backing of the Judiciary.

**Q. 11. What do you mean by residuary power?**

**Answer:** The Constitution determines the extent of sharing of power between the Union and the State Governments. The Seventh Schedule of the Indian Constitution delimits

the subjects of each level of governmental jurisdiction, dividing them into three lists: the Union List containing subjects on which the Union Government has sole Jurisdiction. The State List containing subjects on which the State Government has sole Jurisdiction. The Concurrent List which includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Government as well as the State Governments and both have jurisdiction on these subjects. If their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will prevail.

But there are certain subjects like laws related to computer software, that have developed after the constitution had been created. These subjects that do not fall under any of the three lists are known as 'residuary subjects' and the Union Government has the power to legislate on these subjects. This power is known as 'residuary power'.

**Q. 12. What experiment did take place in Brazil in decentralisation?**

**Answer:** Brazil has carried out an extraordinary experiment that combines both, decentralisation and participative democracy. A city called Porto Alegre in Brazil has adopted the system of popular participation in the definition of public investment. This process in public administration is called the Participatory Budget. Participatory budgeting is a process of democratic deliberation and decision-making, in which ordinary people decide how to allocate part of a municipal or public budget. Participatory budgeting allows citizens to identify, discuss, and prioritize public spending projects, and gives them the power to make real decisions about how money is spent. The first full participatory budgeting process was developed in the city starting in 1989. Participatory budgeting in its most meaningful form took place in the city from 1991 to 2004.

**Q. 13. How is federalism practised in India?**

**Answer:** Federalism is a form of governance which revolves around power sharing between a general government at the centre (federal' government) with regional governments (provincial, state, cantonal, territorial or other sub-unit governments) in a single political system. And the tenets of this power sharing is usually outlined in the Constitution. The different tiers govern the same people, but each has their own jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation, and administration as mandated by the constitution. The Indian Union has a federal government. It originally was two-tier system with a Central Government and the State Governments. Later a third -tier was added for rural areas and is known as 'Panchayati Raj'. These different tiers have separate jurisdiction as mandated by the Indian Constitution. The following points portray how democratic politics has enabled the practice of successful federalism in India.

**(a) By organizing the Linguistic States:** The creation of Linguistic States was the first and a major test for democratic politics in our country. This was done to ensure that people who spoke the same language lived in the same State. Some States were created on the basis of language to recognize differences based on culture, ethnicity or



geography. This incident is considered a major test because several national leaders feared that this would ultimately lead to a breakdown of democracy in India. But experience has shown that this has led to more unity in the country along with the easier administration.

**(b) By developing a language policy:** A second test for Indian federation is the language policy. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the official language. But Hindi is the mother tongue of only about 40 per cent of Indians. Therefore, there were many safeguards to protect other languages. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognized as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. States to have their own official languages. This flexibility has allowed harmony to exist in the country although several violent incidents regarding the promotion of Hindi as an official language have created problems in recent times.

**(c) By re-structuring, the Centre-State relations:** Restructuring the Centre-State relations is one more way in which federalism has been strengthened in practice in India. The constitutional arrangements for sharing power, working in reality depends to a large extent on how the ruling parties and leaders follow these arrangements. The rise of a number of regional parties and establishment of coalition governments led to a new culture of power-sharing and respect for the autonomy of the state governments. The Supreme Court also passed judgments that made it difficult for the Central Government to dismiss the views and concerns of any State Government in an arbitrary fashion. Thus, federal power-sharing in India has become more effective than in early years after the Constitution came into force mainly due to Coalitions Government and the backing of the Judiciary.

Despite the Constitutional provisions ensuring the success of federalism in India, it is the nature of democratic politics in India that is the real reason behind the success of federalism in India. The above points demonstrate how the spirit of federalism has been ensured and practised in India, respecting the diversity for which India is famous. Federalism has allowed Indians of various diversity to reside together under the aegis of the Union and made it a shared ideal for all Indians.

**Q. 14. Give two arguments in favour of decentralisation of power to local governments. What are the two provision under the amendment of 1992 which empower Local Governments in India?**

**Answer:** Decentralisation is the process through which the decision-making processes and powers regarding the governance of the country are distributed between several branches of the government with the aim of better efficiency in administration. It follows a tiered system where the topmost authority is the central authority and retains the power to make the final decision. But the lower tiers also enjoy exclusive legislative, administrative and juridical powers which are outlined by a constitution. The best illustration of decentralisation is a federal system. At present decentralisation in India , is

a legal and constitutional system and in the normal course, this decentralisation or division of power cannot be altered whimsically. Decentralisation has been strongly supported on the specific idea that with the change of time and progress of society the responsibilities and functions of public administration have enormously increased. Two arguments in favour of decentralisation of power to local governments have been listed below:

**(a) Reduces the burden on top executives:** Decentralisation relieves the top executives of the burden of performing various functions. The centralisation of authority puts the whole responsibility on the shoulders of an executive and his immediate group. This reduces the time at the disposal of top executives who should concentrate on other important managerial functions. So, the only way to lessen their burden is to decentralise the decision-making power to the subordinates.

**(b) Better control and supervision:** Decentralisation ensure better control and supervision as the subordinates at the lowest levels will have the authority to make independent decisions. As a result, they have a thorough knowledge of every assignment under their control and are in a position to make amendments and take corrective action.

Thus, decentralisation can be extremely beneficial. But it can be dangerous unless it is carefully constructed and constantly monitored for the good of the country as a whole.

A major step towards decentralisation in India was taken in 1992 when the Constitution was amended to make the third-tier of democracy more powerful and effective. The 74th Amendment Act 1992, relating to Municipalities (Urban local Government) was passed by the parliament in 1992. The Act seeks to provide a common framework for the structure and mandate of urban and rural local bodies to enable them to function as effective democratic units of local Self Government. The two main provisions of 1992 Constitutional amendment that strengthen the third tier of government of India were as follows.

**(a)** Now it has become constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local bodies.

**(b)** After the implementation of this amendment it became necessary to reserve seats in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes along with reservations of at least one-third of the total seats for women.

In many states local bodies had become weak and ineffective on account of a variety of reasons, including the failure to hold regular elections, prolonged super-sessions and inadequate devolution of powers and functions. As a result, Urban Local Bodies are not able to perform effectively as vibrant democratic units of self-government. These provisions have gone a long way to correct some of these issues and aid in the development of the local bodies as a whole.

### **Q. 15. Explain how federalism practised in India?**

**Answer:** Federalism is a form of governance which revolves around power sharing between a general government at the centre (federal' government) with regional governments (provincial, state, cantonal, territorial or other sub-unit governments) in a single political system. And the tennets of this power sharing is usually outlined in the constitution. The different tiers govern the same people but each has their own jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation, and administration as mandated by the constitution. The Indian Union has a federal government. It originally was two-tier system with a Central Government and the State Governments. Later a third -tier was added for rural areas and is known as 'Panchayati Raj'. These different tiers have separate jurisdiction as mandated by the Indian Constitution. The following points portray how democratic politics has enabled the practice of successful federalism in India.

**(a) By organizing Linguistic States:** The creation of Linguistic States was the first and a major test for democratic politics in our country. This was done to ensure that people who spoke the same language lived in the same State. Some States were created on the basis of language but to recognize differences based on culture, ethnicity or geography. This incident is considered a major test because several national leaders feared that this would ultimately lead to a breakdown of democracy in India. But experience has shown that this has led to more unity in the country along with the easier administration.

**(b) By developing a language policy:** A second test for Indian federation is the language policy. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the official language. But Hindi is the mother tongue of only about 40 per cent of Indians. Therefore, there were many safeguards to protect other languages. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognized as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. States too have their own official languages. This flexibility has allowed harmony to exist in the country although several violent incidents regarding promotion of Hindi as an official language have created problems in recent times.

**(c) By re-structuring the Centre-State relations:** Restructuring the Centre-State relations is one more way in which federalism has been strengthened in practice in India. The constitutional arrangements for sharing power, working in reality depends to a large extent on how the ruling parties and leaders follow these arrangements. Rise of a number of regional parties and establishment of coalition governments led to a new culture of power sharing and respect for the autonomy of the state governments. The Supreme Court also passed judgments that made it difficult for the Central Government to dismiss the views and concerns of any State Government in an arbitrary fashion. Thus, federal power-sharing in India has become more effective than in early years after the Constitution came into force mainly due to Coalitions Government and the backing of the Judiciary.

Despite the Constitutional provisions ensuring the success of federalism in India, it is the nature of democratic politics in India that is the real reason behind the success of federalism in India. The above points demonstrate how the spirit of federalism has been ensured and practised in India, respecting the diversity for which India is famous. Federalism has allowed Indians of various diversity to reside together under the aegis of the Union and made it a shared ideal for all Indians.

**Q. 16. State any two achievements and any two problems of the Panchayati Raj System In India.**

**Answer:** Rural local government is popularly known as the Panchayati Raj System in India. It was introduced by a constitutional amendment in 1992, although it is based upon the traditional panchayat system of South Asia. It was established to practice a more decentralised form of governance.

The structure of Panchayati Raj varies from state to state. Some states have three-tier structure (Gram Panchayat at the village level, Panchayat Samiti at block level and Zilla Parishad at district level), whereas some have two-tier structure (Gram Panchayat at village level and Panchayat Samiti at block level). A few states have only single-tier structure at the village level. Two main achievements of the Panchayati Raj System are as follows –

**(a)** Panchayats can best carry out the development programmes, such as mending roads, terrace, and embank the fields, building bunds, digging drains, provide fresh drinking water, etc. They are best constituted to organize voluntary labour for social upliftment and economic amelioration. Since they are directly involving the local people, resource distribution for the various development works is more appropriate and involves less risk.

**(b)** Panchayati Raj system ensures effective coordination between Government programmes and those of voluntary agencies. It acts as a potential school for political training of the masses and can also serve as schools of social service, health care, popular education and social progress.

Despite the various benefits of the Panchayati Raj System, it still suffers from various problems two of which have been stated below.

**(a)** The local Government bodies like village panchayats, municipalities and municipal corporations are under the direct control of state Governments. The official hierarchy failed to inspire confidence among the village people. Bureaucrats were unwilling to transfer power to elected representatives. They did not release funds in time. The Panchayati Raj system often is not functioning owing to the lack of political will, lack of proper evaluation and feedback, and indifference to corrective measures.

**(b)** The competitive elections have politicized the environment of all villages. It is alleged that panchayat elections have given birth to caste politics (casteism), communal politics (communalism) and groupism and factionalism in the villages. It is also alleged

that due to panchayat elections, a 'cold war' atmosphere prevails among various sections of the village people.

It is hoped that the Panchayati Raj System will be able to harness and develop the better characteristics of the average villagers in spite of their illiteracy and restricted range of experience. It is also expected that this system will bring new aspiration and fresh stimulus to national self-respect.

### **Q. 17. How can a government attain financial autonomy?**

**Answer:** Federalism is a form of governance which revolves around power sharing between a general government at the centre (federal' government) with regional governments (provincial, state, cantonal, territorial or other sub-unit governments) in a single political system. To illustrate this one can, use the example of India and its federal structure.

The Indian Union has a federal government. It originally was two- tier system with a Central Government and the State Governments. Later a third -tier was added for rural areas and is known as 'Panchayati Raj'. These different tiers have separate jurisdiction as mandated by the Indian Constitution. To ensure financial autonomy the sources of revenue for both the central government and state governments are clearly specified in the constitution, which indicates their main sources of income. Following are some of the Articles listed in the Indian Constitution to promote financial autonomy.

1. Article 282 accords financial autonomy in spending financial resources available to the states for public purpose. Article 293 allows States to borrow without limit without consent from the Union government.
2. The President of India constitutes a Finance Commission every five years to recommend devolution of Union revenues to State governments.
3. Under Article 360, the President can proclaim a financial emergency when the financial stability or credit of the nation or of any part of its territory is threatened.

Thus from the above discussion, it is evident that the financial autonomy of a government under a federal system is entitled through the Constitution followed by the Government.

### **Q. 18. What was the need in the Constitution to frame language policy?**

**Answer:** India does not have any national language and this was done to ensure the protection of the other languages. India does have an official language. As per Article 343 of the Constitution of India, India's official languages shall be Standard Hindi (the dialect known as khadi boli) written in the Devanagari script and English. These are the official languages of India at the Central Government level. States within India have the liberty and powers to specify their own official language(s) through legislation and therefore there are 22 officially recognized languages in India of which Hindi is the most used.

The section of the Constitution of India dealing with official languages therefore includes detailed provisions which deal not just with the languages used for the official purposes of the union, but also with the languages that are to be used for the official purposes of each state and union territory in the country, and the languages that are to be used for communication between the union and the states inter se.

Unlike Sri Lanka, the leaders of our country adopted a very cautious attitude in spreading the use of Hindi. According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes was to stop in 1965. However, many non-Hindi speaking States demanded that the use of English continue and this demand took a violent form in Tamil Nadu. The Central Government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes and was criticised for favouring the english-speaking elite.

Promotion of Hindi continues to be the official policy of the Government of India but this does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language. The flexibility shown by Indian political leaders helped the country to avoid the kind of violence related to language that Sri Lanka has faced.

Given this diversity of language, it was necessary that the Indian Constitution adopted or framed a language policy for the country which would celebrate the diversity and at the same time allow people to adapt if necessary. The legal framework governing the use of languages for official purpose currently includes the Constitution, the Official Languages Act, 1963, Official Languages (Use for Official Purpose of the Union) Rules, 1976, and various state laws, as well as rules and regulations made by the central government and the states.

# Democracy and Diversity

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Which two black players did raise their voice against racism in 1968 Olympics?**

**Answer:** The 1968 Olympics was held in Mexico City. Two players named Tommie Smith and John Carlos, African American athletes, had won gold and bronze respectively in 200m race. They raised their voice against racism and discrimination in the US, during the medal ceremony they stood with clenched fists upraised, head bowed wearing black socks and no shoes while the American anthem was played.

**Q. 2. Name the Australian athlete who supported the protest of black players in 1968 Olympics.**

**Answer:** The 1968 Olympics was held in Mexico City.

Two players named Tommie Smith and John Carlos raised their voice against discrimination towards blacks.

An Australian athlete named Peter Norman supported them by wearing a human rights badge on his shirt during the ceremony.

**Q. 3. On which factor do most of the social differences are based upon?**

**Answer:** the factors on which social differences are based are:

- a. an accident of birth – the family, the community or to the community one is born into
- b. Gender: male or female
- c. Religion or caste
- d. Race or creed

**Q. 4. Why does 'Homogeneous' society change rapidly?**

**Answer:** A homogeneous society is one where people belongs to the same ethnicity, there are no differences as society has similar kind of people.

This type of society is rapidly changing because of the influx of migrants. The migrants are people who shift from their origin nation or region to other countries or different region of the same country, and this activity is mainly due to work or other economic opportunities.

As these Migrants are moving to different parts of the world, they introduce their own culture and customs to these nations.

## **Check Point 02**

### **Q. 1. Give the reason for the ethno-political conflict in Northern Ireland.**

**Answer:** Northern Ireland is a Christian country but divided into Catholics and Protestants. The Catholics have a history of racial and social discrimination, they have been poorer compared to the Protestants. After the partition of the island of Ireland between Republic of Ireland and Northern Ireland.

- Northern Ireland had Catholics in the minority. The region was and continues to be an ethnically heterogeneous society.
- Apart from this heterogeneity, inequality with the Catholic community also exists, they suffer disadvantage relative to the Protestants.
- The Catholics were discriminated in the allocation of housing, electoral system, and the labor market.
- In Northern Ireland, the Catholics are more likely to be poor compared to the Protestants. The Catholics of Northern Ireland have a history of social discrimination. As a result, both the community conflicts.

### **Q. 2. How did the government policy of Sri Lanka affect the interest of the minority?**

**Answer:** Sri Lanka is an island nation, south of India. It got independence in 1948. It has a diverse population like most of the South Asian nations.

The population in the majority is Sinhala speakers, with about 74% and rest are Tamil Speakers.

When Sri Lanka recognized Sinhala as the only official language, it disregarded Tamils. They felt that they were denied equality. As a result, the relationship between the Sinhala and the Tamils strained and the Sri Lankan Tamils launched movements against the government.

### **Q. 3. Point out the cause when social division becomes less threatening.**

**Answer:** Every social division is not threatening or is a danger for the society.

- a. Social division becomes less threatening when it offers advantages to the deprived communities.
- b. It is less threatening when the demands of communities are fulfilled.
- c. The social division offers chances to the people to represent their communities and hence able them to meet the expectations of their communities.

### **Q. 4. How the majoritarian principles was adopted by the Sri Lankan Government?**



**Answer:** In 1956 an Act was passed in Sri Lanka that recognized Sinhala as the only official language while disregarding Tamil.

- There was a provision of protecting and fostering Buddhism.
- There was a preferential policy that favoured Sinhala in every field while alienating Sri Lankan Tamils.

## **Self-Assessment**

**Q. 1. Mention any two factors responsible two origins of social differences.**

**Answer:** The factors responsible for the origin of social differences are :

- a. Birth:** The community, the religion, the caste in which are born.
- b. Choices:** The way people choose to live, e.g., some prefer going to temples or believe in God while some may not.
- c. Religion:** The customs or religious practice one follows.
- d. Occupation:** The work that one wants to do.

**Q. 2. Name some European countries Which were once highly homogeneous, but later transformed into mixed society.**

**Answer:** Homogeneous society means a place where there are no social differences, people are similar in their way of living.

Mixed society is one where there is diversity in people; there are social differences.

The European nations that once were homogeneous but have now diversity in their population due to the influx of migrants are Germany, Sweden.

**Q. 3. On which factor, the social difference is mostly based?**

**Answer:** The social differences are mostly based on the birth factor, but there are also other factors upon which it depends.

- a. Birth:** The community, the religion, the caste in which are born.
- b. Choices:** The way people choose to live, e.g., some prefer going to temples or believe in God while some may not.
- c. Religion:** The customs or religious practice one follows.
- d. Occupation:** The work that one wants to do.

**Q. 4. What is the ethnic composition of Northern Ireland?**

**Answer:** Northern Ireland is a Christian country but divided into Catholics and Protestants. The Catholics have a history of racial and social discrimination, they have been poorer compared to the Protestants.

Northern Ireland had Catholics in the minority, the region was and continues to be an ethnically heterogeneous society.

Apart from this heterogeneity, inequality with the Catholic community also exists, they suffer disadvantage relative to the Protestants.

**Q. 5. Why did Tommie Smith and John Carlos wear black and no shoes in the medal ceremony of 1968 Olympics?**

**Answer:** The 1968 Olympics was held in Mexico City. Two players named Tommie Smith and John Carlos, an African American athlete had won gold and bronze respectively in 200m race. They raised their voice against racism and discrimination in the US, during the medal ceremony they stood with clenched fists upraised, head bowed wearing black socks and no shoes while the American anthem was played.

They represented themselves on behalf of that population which were discriminated in the United States on the basis of creed and color.

**Q. 6. In which situation, overlapping differences happen?**

**Answer:** The overlapping of social differences creates social divisions and tensions. When the differences in society overlap each other, it gives rise to social division.

**Example:** In US the blacks were usually poor, homeless hence were discriminated by the White Americans. This created social division.

In India, the Dalits were treated as Untouchables because they were born lower caste compared to rest. They were poor, had no homes, were not allowed to perform decent work. This created a social division in the society, which deep-rooted and India is still struggling to overcome this division.

**Q. 7. Is political expression of social division normal in a democracy?**

**Answer:** Yes it is common in any democracy. In a democracy, political competition is inevitable. In almost every country social division in politics exists.

Any country where the population exists in wide diversity, a social division exists in politics, because it is natural that these parties would make different promises and fulfill different demands of the various communities. Many a times these parties support any one community to gain their vote.

**Q. 8. Which university installed statues of the US athletes?**

**Answer:** The 1968 Olympics was held in Mexico City. Two players named Tommie Smith and John Carlos, an African American athletes had won gold and bronze respectively in 200m race. They raised their voice against racism and discrimination in the US, during the medal ceremony they stood with clenched fists upraised, head bowed wearing black socks and no shoes while the American anthem was played.

To honor this courage of the athletes the San Jones State University installed a 20ft sculpture of Tommie Smith and John Carlos.

**Q. 9. Was there any other option left for African-American athletes apart from raising their voice against discrimination?**

**Answer:** They could have opted to walk away with the greet and medal they received simply, but the two athletes showed the courage to represent the discrimination faced by the black community in their country.

They were criticized by their home state, their medals were taken back, but their action gained international attention towards the discrimination.

Later to honor this courage of the athletes, the San Jones State University installed a 20ft sculpture of Tommie Smith and John Carlos.

**Q. 10. How did the Australian athlete portray his support?**

**Answer:** The 1968 Olympics was held in Mexico City.

Two players named Tommie Smith and John Carlos raised their voice against discrimination towards blacks.

An Australian athlete named Peter Norman supported them by wearing a human rights badge on his shirt during the ceremony.

Norman suffered criticism for his action; he was barred from Olympics by his own team. But his action was recognized and it gained international attention towards the discrimination.

**Q. 11. How is the political expression of social divisions in a democracy beneficial?**

**Answer:** A democracy is where plea and petition of every person irrespective of caste and community are recognized.

There are many benefits of democracy, one being that it breaches social division:

- a. Many depressed class people raise their voices; they get to express themselves before the government.
- b. The government frames policies to eradicate discrimination and determines the needs of these people.
- c. The government does not entertain any demand that increases social division.

**Q. 12. Taking the example of Carlos, Smith, and Norman, explain how social difference divides similar people from one another, but also unite very different people.**

**Answer:** The 1968 Olympics was held in Mexico City. Two players named Tommie Smith and John Carlos, an African American athletes, had won gold and bronze respectively in 200m race.

They raised their voice against racism and discrimination in the US, during the medal ceremony they stood with clenched fists upraised, head bowed wearing black socks and no shoes while the American anthem was played. Though both belonged to America yet, they were discriminated by their own country.

An Australian athlete named Peter Norman supported them by wearing a human rights badge on his shirt during the ceremony to show his support against discrimination.

**Q. 13. How do class and religion overlap with each other in Northern Ireland?**

**Answer:** Northern Ireland is a Christian country but divided into Catholics and Protestants. The Catholics have a history of racial and social discrimination, they have been poorer compared to the Protestants.

Northern Ireland had Catholics in the minority, the region was and continues to be an ethnically heterogeneous society.

Apart from this heterogeneity, inequality with the Catholic community also exists, they suffer disadvantage relative to the Protestants.

**Q. 14. What are the major sects of Christianity in Northern Ireland?**

**Answer:** Northern Ireland is a Christian country but divided into Catholics and Protestants. The Catholics have a history of racial and social discrimination, they have been poorer compared to the Protestants.

After the partition of the island of Ireland between Republic of Ireland and Northern Ireland. Northern Ireland has Catholics in the minority.

**Q. 15. Who are Dalits? How are they repressed in our society?**

**Answer:** The Dalits are mostly poor, landless, they are recognized as a lower caste people in our society.

**a.** Pre-Independence and post-independence have a long history of discrimination done towards the Dalits; they are treated as untouchables.

**b.** They are considered to be so 'impure' that it is considered that their mere touch severely pollutes members of all other castes.

**c.** They are not allowed to enter in some of the temples by the priests.

**d.** Prohibited from eating with other members of other castes.

**e.** Prohibited from marrying other upper caste members.

**f.** Bonded labor.

- g.** Their occupation is decided by their caste.
- h.** Untouchability does not offer equal opportunity to these people and thus hinders the progress of society.
- i.** The untouchables are treated in an unfair manner, and many times their entry at certain places like temples, etc. are also denied.
- j.** Treating them in such a way is a disrespect towards the Constitution which focuses on communal harmony and brotherhood.
- k. Example:** The manual scavenging is done by only the lower caste people.

**Q. 16. What are the chief outcomes of the social division in the country in the context of democracy and election?**

**Answer:** Democracy is established in a country when people of that nation is treated equally, and they elect their leader by casting a vote.

Though democracy is the best form of government for any nation yet, it has many demerits too.

- a.** In a democracy, the political parties compete against each other, and most of the times this competition gives rise to hastiness among the parties.
- b.** The competition against each other divides society.
- c.** Many times these parties support any one community to gain their vote, while this leads to communalism between the communities.
- d.** Sometimes the people of a specific community cast their vote to the candidate of their own community even without knowing his identity.
- e.** Communities raise demands which are against the constitutional means and sometimes their demands are at the cost of other communities.

These are a social division that occurs in a democratic nation.

**Q. 17. How is democracy helping in breaching social division?**

**Answer:** A democracy is where plea and petition of every person irrespective of caste and community are recognized.

**There are many benefits of democracy, one being that it breaches social division:**

- a.** Many depressed class people raise their voices; they get to express themselves before the government.
- b.** The government frames policies to eradicate discrimination and determines the needs of these people.
- c.** The government does not entertain any demand that increases social division.

# Gender, Religion and Caste

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. What do you mean by gender division?**

**Answer:** This is a form of hierarchical social division which is not based on biology but on social expectations and stereotypes as we know that gender is unchangeable and natural. It is basically a division of work between men and women on the basis of their sex. Gender division doesn't mean that women do not work outside the house, they do work, but there is a division of work on the bases of gender.

**Q. 2. In which group of countries, the participation of women in public life is very high?**

**Answer:** Mostly we notice that the participation of women in public life is very less almost in all the countries. But, there are some countries which are exceptions, where we see the participation of women is very high and very active. These countries are Scandinavian countries such as Sweden, Norway, and Finland.

**Q. 3. Which model of the state is adopted by Constitution- makers of India?**

**Answer:** The Equal Remuneration Act, 1976 provides that equal wages should be paid to equal work. According to this Act, all the workers should get equal wages, and there should be no discrimination on the bases of their gender. According to our constitution men and women, both are equal in status so they should be paid equally for their work.

**Q. 4. What does the secular state provide?**

**Answer:** As we know that India is a very big country with a variety of religions, so we need secularism in our country. The secular state provides equal status to all religion and gives freedom to all individuals and communities to practice any religion. In a secular state, everyone is free to choose the religion of their choice. No One can be forced to practice some particular religion.

## Check Point 02

**Q. 1. Name the system based on exclusion and discrimination.**

**Answer:** Caste system is based on the exclusion and discrimination. Even today, we see discrimination on the basis of caste at many places. Mostly, the lower caste people are discriminated by the upper caste ones. This makes them feel discriminated, isolated and deprived.

**Q. 2. Suggest any one advantage of casteism in politics.**

**Answer:** As we know that everything has some pros and cons, so does casteism. It has some disadvantages and also some advantages. A very good example of the advantage of casteism in politics is “Preservation of Culture”. Casteism in politics helps to preserve our culture as very see every political party support some religion or culture. For example, BJP in our country is said to preserve the Hindu culture.

**Q. 3. What do you mean by the term OBC?**

**Answer:** OBC is referred to as “Other backward classes.” After independence, OBCs have been identified through specially appointed commissions. The Kalelkar Commission laid down four criteria to identify OBCs: low social position in caste hierarchy, lack of general educational advancement among the majority of the caste/ community, inadequate or lack of representation in government service, and industry.

**Q. 4. What is Universal Adults Franchise?**

**Answer:** Universal adult franchise means that the right to vote to all the citizens of age group 18 or above without any discrimination of caste, colour, class, religion or gender. In Universal Adults Franchise all citizens have the right to vote irrespective of gender.

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. What do you mean by stereotype?**

**Answer:** Stereotypes are characteristics imposed upon particular groups of people on the basis of their caste, religion, sex, and nationality. It is a set idea that people have about what someone or something is like, especially an idea that is wrong.

**Q. 2. In which country, the participation of women in public life is very high?**

**Answer:** As we know that the participation of women in public life is very less almost in all countries. But, there are some countries in which we see the very active participation of women in public life. These countries are Sweden, Norway, and Finland.

**Q. 3. Which act provides that equal wages should be paid for equal work to both men and women?**

**Answer:** The Equal Remuneration Act, 1976 provides that equal wages should be paid to equal work. According to this Act, all the workers should get equal wages, and there should be no discrimination on the bases of their gender. According to our constitution men and women, both are equal in status so they should be paid equally for their work.

**Q. 4. Mention any two bases of social division in India.**

**Answer:** Two main bases are gender and religion. Women are mostly discriminated on the basis of gender in terms of payment of equal wages, respect in society, lower status in domestic matters, etc.

Religion is another factor of division. Many a times, the majority inflicts some dominance over the minority in various ways.

**Q. 5. Explain the model of the secular state in India.**

**Answer:** • Indian model of secularism does not support any one particular religion or community. It treats all citizens equally.

- It gives freedom to all the citizens to practice any religion of their choice.
- It is against the discrimination of people on the bases of religion.
- The state has a right to intervene in the matters of religion in order to maintain equality among communities.

**Q. 6. 'In India women's political representation is very low'. Justify.**

**Answer:** It is true that women's political representation is very less. Women are thought to be confined to the house. They are supposed to do all the household chores and take care of children. One of the main reasons being the patriarchal nature of our society. Even today, in many villages, girls are not allowed to study which results in lesser women in the educational sphere. Less exposure to the outside world confines the women to their homes.

**Q. 7. Why is it necessary to have 'secularism' in India?**

**Answer:** India is a very big country with a number of communities, religions, and caste. So, it becomes necessary to have secularism in India in order to maintain equality within all religious communities. Under Indian secularism, no one is to be discriminated and everyone has the right to practice any religion of their choice.

**Q. 8. Do the 'caste' and 'Vote bank' factors completely control the election in India?**

**Answer:** No, though it is true that Caste and Vote bank factors control the election to some extent in India. Candidate of the party influence people and appeal on the basis of caste sentiments to get their support. They get support especially from the people who have an orthodox mindset. These people form the 'Vote Bank' of that party.

But at the same time, there has been tremendous improvement in the way elections are held today. Increase in literacy rate and education levels in society has made many citizens aware of right choices.

**Q. 9. What is the most sought out demand of women at home?**

**Answer:** The most sought out demand of women at home is to take care of children and to do all the household chores. They are supposed to take care of the family members and work without any expectations. They are supposed to live inside the house and are left unnoticed by everyone. Their importance in decision making of the household matters is also very less.



**Q. 10. How did newly developed political consciousness help to improve the status of women in India?**

**Answer:** Now a days, our government is working to improve the status of the women in our country. There are many steps in this direction. One of them is "The Equal Remuneration Act", 1976 which provides equal wages to all. Now women get wages equal as men for same work. The gender issue is also being taken seriously by the government. Schemes like Beti Bachao Beti Padhao aim towards increasing female literacy and decreasing female infanticide.

**Q. 11. What is the most sought out demand of women's organization and activists from the Lok Sabha and State Assemblies regarding women empowerment?**

**Answer:** The most sought out demand of women organisations is reservation in the Parliament. Though reservation of 33 per cent is provided in local governments, it is yet to be a requirement of Lok Sabha and state Assemblies. Many organisations have pitched for the passage of the "long pending" Women's Reservation Bill.

**Q. 12. Why do you think parents in India prefer a son over girl child?**

**Answer:** in many parts of India parents prefer sons and find ways to have the girl child aborted before she is born because of their patriarchal thinking. They think that a boy child will live with them and will take care of them when they get old. Also, they think that at the time of marriage of their son they will receive expensive gifts. Apart from that, there is an orthodox mentality that if they invest in a boy's education they will get **the benefits later on as the girl will eventually get married.**

**Q. 13 "Gender division is not based on biology but on social expectations and stereotypes". Support the statements.**

**Answer:** Biologically there is no discrimination between the girl and boy child. Gender discrimination is present in our society because of the patriarchal thinking. Women are thought to do household chores and take care of children and men are supposed to work outside of the house and earn money. There is also discrimination of labor on the bases of sex. Women are paid less for their work as compared to men. These ideas have been a part of the society since ages which has aggravated the condition of women.

**Q. 14 'The rigid caste system is disappearing in India.' Explain the major factors responsible for this. Suggest any two ways through which this can be further speeded up.**

**Answer:** Caste system is disappearing in India because times have changed. Nowadays, educated people do not mind caste and religion of the other peoples. Many changes like Urbanisation, literacy and education growth, positions of landlords in villages are weakening and breakdown of old notions of caste hierarchy have

contributed in vanishing the caste divisions. This can be speeded up by employing the following:

1. Spread of education, which plays an important role in shaping our minds.
2. Spreading awareness and sensitizing the institutions.

**Q. 15. Suggest any three steps to improve the women's participation in politics.**

**Answer:** Steps to improve the women's participation in politics:

- Educating them so as to make them aware of their rights and duties
- Reservation of at least one-third of seats in Lok Sabha and State Assemblies for women.
- Political parties should also give due representation to women members.

**Q. 16. Mention any positive role of caste in politics.**

**Answer:** Some of the positive roles of caste in politics are as below:

1. It gives the opportunity to many backward and discriminated communities; the space to demand their share of power.
2. Caste system helped many Dalits or people belonging to the lower-class section of the society or OBC gain better access to decision making. Also, they can gain due recognition in various fields.

**Q. 17. What ways does politics influence caste system?**

**Answer:** Political parties and candidates in election influence people and make use of caste sentiments to win the support of the people. Some political parties favor some caste and become their representatives. These people form their 'vote banks'. In greed of gaining more votes, some political parties instead of eliminating the caste differences, support the ideas of orthodox people, thus promoting the caste system.

**Q. 18. Explain the political demand of the Feminist Movement in India.**

**Answer:** 1. The demand of the Feminist Movement in India is that women should get their share in politics and administration.

2. There should be a fair proportion of women's in the elected bodies. They demand that there should be reservation of at least one-third of seats in Lok Sabha and State Assembly.

3. The status of women in society should improve. They should not be thought of only as homemakers and should have due share in decision-making activities.

# Political Parties

---

## Check Point 01

### Q. 1. What are the essentials of a political party?

**Answer:** A political party is a group of people with a similar ideology, who contest elections of a nation and form a ruling government. Every member of a particular party works on the same front, their methods might differ, but their aim is the same.

#### **The essential of a political party is:**

**a. A Leader:** The one who forms the party and its agendas and leads the consequent members of the party.

**b. The Active members:** They are people who promote the party's work and ideologies throughout the region and nation. Every state has members of different parties.

**c. The followers:** They are the people or rather common citizens who are influenced by these parties and wants to be governed by it. They are inspired by the works and ideologies of the party.

### Q. 2. Why are political parties necessary for a modern democracy?

**Answer:** A political party is a group of people with a similar ideology, to contest elections of a nation and form a ruling government. Century ago there were few countries that had political parties, but now every country except few have political parties, who contest the elections and forms government to run the country.

A Political party is synonymous to democracy, as the election is vital for any democracy to contest elections these political parties are necessary.

#### **They are necessary due to the following reasons:**

**a.** The parties frame policies and agendas that are for the welfare of the entire nation. Any policy is not just directed towards a single person, but for all.

**b.** They promote their ideas for the national good during the election and promise to work towards it.

**c.** They put forward programmes that are for the upliftment of backward communities.

**d.** Multiple parties create a sense of competition which can act as a motivation for a leader to work more towards the larger goal.

### Q. 3. In order to become a national party, what percent of votes are required by a party in the Lok Sabha election?

**Answer:** The political parties have to get them registered with the Election Commission in order to contest the election.

The EC has made norms like the minimum number of votes the party has to secure in the assembly election in order to get the status of a recognised party.

A party has to get minimum 6% of total votes in Lok Sabha or state assembly elections in four states and win atleast 4 seats in the Lok Sabha, is recognized as a national party.

**Q. 4. Give two examples of countries having two -party system.**

**Answer:** There are different types of party system. There is a one-party system where only one party is allowed to run the government, like China. There is two parties system where only two parties contest election like the USA. Multi-party system where several parties contest the election. Eg. India

The countries having a two-part system are the United States and the United Kingdom.

**Q. 5. Name some regional parties which have a national level organization.**

**Answer:** There are six national parties in India, namely Indian National Congress, BJP, Bahujan Samaj Party, Communist Party of India-Marxist, Communist Party of India, National Congress Party.

Apart from these, rest all other parties are regional parties. These parties are classified by the Election Commission.

There are some parties, though that are regional like Samajwadi Party, Samata Party, Rashtriya Janta Dal.

## **Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. What is defection?**

**Answer:** Defection means changing the membership from a party. It is a practice where a person who gets elected to the legislative assembly from a party leaves that party and acquires membership of another party.

This is a negative action because the members change the party in the lure of becoming a minister or for cash rewards. The parties influence the members with monetary power.

**Q. 2. What do you mean by affidavit?**

**Answer:** The Supreme Court passed an order that every candidate had to give details of personal information and any cases pending against them, to reduce the criminalization of politics.

These details are filed in an Affidavit, that contains the details like the properties of the candidate or any pending cases against him/her in the court.

**Q. 3 Mention any one challenge faced by political parties in India.**

**Answer:** The political parties are the face of democracy. They are the one who regulates the nation, so for any wrongdoing in our society, the parties are ultimately blamed.

The political parties throughout the world face several problems, the first being the lack of internal democracy within the parties:

- a. The powers of the political parties are generally held with only a few people. Not every member of the party gets the chance to be the leader.
- b. The workers of the parties do not get the chance to rise up since any internal elections or rewards are not given.
- c. The next challenge is the criminalization of parties. The rich and powerful acquire the membership of the parties through money power and misuse their powers.

**Q. 4. Is it necessary for a political party to file an income tax return?**

**Answer:** Yes, it is necessary for a political party to file an income tax returns.

The Election Commission has made it compulsory to file the income tax returns, for the political parties. Any political party as per Section 13A is required to furnish return of income under Section 139(4B) if its income exceeds maximum amount not chargeable to tax.

**Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. Where political parties have to register themselves?**

**Answer:** The political parties have to register themselves with the Election Commission.

- a. The commission treats every party equally.
- b. It gives the parties a specific symbol.
- c. The EC has made norms like the minimum number of votes the party has to secure in the assembly election in order to get the status of a recognized party.
- d. A party has to get minimum 6% of total votes in Lok Sabha or state assembly elections in four states and win atleast 4 seats in the Lok Sabha, is recognized as a national party.

**Q. 2. What is the function of a political party?**

**Answer:** The political parties are the face of democracy. They are the one who regulates the nation, so for any wrongdoing in our society, the parties are ultimately blamed.

- a. The parties frame policies and agendas that are for the welfare of the entire nation. Any policy is not just directed towards a single person, but for all.
- b. They promote their ideas for the national goods during the election and when they win they work towards it.
- c. They put forward programmes that are for the upliftment of backward communities.

**Q. 3. In which state does 'Shiv Sena' exist as a regional political party?**

**Answer:** Shiv Sena is a regional political party with its base in Maharashtra, founded by Bal Thakarey.

A regional party is one that is restricted to a particular state, it supports the grievances of that particular state mostly. The party identifies itself with regions' culture, language and religion.

**Q. 4. Which facilities are offered by the Election commissions to a recognized political party?**

**Answer:** The political parties have to register themselves with the Election Commission.

- a. The recognized parties are given a unique symbol.
- b. Recognised 'State' and 'National' parties need only one proposer for filing the nomination and are also entitled for two sets of electoral rolls free of cost and broadcast/telecast facilities over Akashvani/Doordarshan during general elections.

**Q. 5. One – party system is not a good option for the country. Why?**

**Answer:** There are many party systems. There is a one-party system where only one party is allowed to run the government, like China.

Then, there is two parties system where only two parties contest election like the USA.

Multi-party system: here several parties contest the election. Eg. India

**The one-party system is not good for the country:**

- a. In a one-party system, people do not have the option to elect a different leader. They had to choose the same leader whether he is liked by the citizens or not.
- b. There is a lack of competition which may result in non-fulfilment of promises by the single party.

**Q. 6. Which political parties are founded on the norms of Marxism-Leninism?**

**Answer:** The Communist Party of India is one of the oldest party of the nation. It was formed in 1925. They rely on the principles of philosophers like Marxism and Leninism, secularism and democracy. They are against secessionism (Separation) and Communalism. They believe that democracy could be achieved through parliamentary methods.

**Q. 7. National Democratic Alliance (NDA) is the alliance of form alliance with state parties?**

**Answer:** The Bhartiya Janta Party was founded in 1980. The party came into power in 1998, with the support of various regional political parties.

The alliance of BJP with various state parties was named as National Democratic Alliance.

**Q. 8. Why are national parties compelled to form an alliance with state parties?**

**Answer:** In the multi-party system, when the political parties compete with each other, there comes a situation when more than the two parties have a high chance of winning if they contest together.

The alliance provides the strength to the parties and the chance of winning increase as the different parties can bring with themselves votes of different regions. Hence the parties are compelled to form an alliance.

**Q. 9. Name two regional/state parties of West Bengal.**

**Answer:** The two regional parties of West Bengal are :

- a. All India Trinamool Congress
- b. All India Forward Bloc

**Q. 10. How is political reforms in a democratic system carried out?**

**Answer:** The ways in which political reforms can be carried out are:

- a. The legislative bodies could make laws.
- b. People can put pressure upon the parties to make necessary changes in the party's way of action.
- c. The pressure groups can carry out rallies.
- d. The media can play an important role by providing information to the citizens.

**Q. 11. Explain different form of the party system in brief.**

**Answer:** There are many party system.

- a. There is a one-party system where only one party is allowed to run the government, like China.

- b. There is two parties system where only two parties contest election like the USA.
- c. A multi-party system where several parties contest the election. E.g. India

**Q. 12. Why are symbols allotted to political parties in India? Explain the reasons.**

**Answer:** The political parties have to register themselves with the Election Commission. It gives the parties a specific symbol.

The symbols help the people in identifying the parties while casting a vote.

There are many illiterate people who cannot read for whom these symbols are useful while casting votes.

**Q. 13. How will you define a regional political party?**

**Answer:** A regional party is one that is restricted to a particular state, it supports the grievances of that particular state mostly. The party identifies itself with regions' culture, language and religion. They participate in the state assembly election of that particular state only.

There are six national parties in India, namely Indian National Congress, BJP, Bahujan Samaj Party, Communist Party of India-Marxist, Communist Party of India, National Congress Party. Apart from these, all other parties are regional parties.

These parties are classified by the Election Commission.

These are established in a particular state only.

**Example:** Samajwadi Party, Samata party, Shiv Sena, etc.

**Q. 15. "The state or regional political parties contribute in strengthening federalism and democracy in India". Explain the statement with examples.**

**Answer:** Federalism means the division of powers.

The political parties are the pillars of a democracy. In a large country like India, it is impossible for any one party to accumulate majority votes. They need to form alliances with other parties. This let the regional parties get into the frame of the national party.

Hence "The state or regional political parties contribute in strengthening federalism and democracy in India."

**Q. 16. Why do we need political parties? Give three reasons.**

**Answer:** The political parties are the face of democracy. They are the ones who regulate the nation. So for any wrongdoing in our society, the parties are ultimately blamed.

- a. The parties frame policies and agendas that are for the welfare of the entire nation. Any policy is not just directed towards a single person, but for all.



- b. They promote their ideas for the national goods during the election and when they win they work towards it.
- c. They put forward programmes that are for the upliftment of backward communities.

**Q. 17. What is the Coalition Government?**

**Answer:** The political parties are the pillars of a democracy. In a large country like India, it is difficult for any one party to accumulate majority votes. They need to form alliances with other parties.

Hence the government formed with the alliance of several parties is called a coalition government.

**Example:** The Bhartiya Janta Party was founded in 1980. The party came into power in 1998, with the support of various regional political parties. The alliance of BJP with various state parties was named as National Democratic Alliance.

**Q. 18. What measure has been taken to curb the problem of defection?**

**Answer:** Defection means changing the membership from a party. A person who gets elected to the legislative assembly from a party leaves that party and acquires membership of another party.

This is a negative action because the members change the party in the lure of becoming a minister or for cash rewards. The parties influence the members with monetary power.

The measures taken to curb defection are.

- a. The Parliament made changes in the Constitution and added a schedule (the 10th schedule) referred to as Anti defection law.
- b. The Constitution was amended, and changing party was made punishable as this would make the member lose their seat in the legislature. MPs and MLAs have to accept whatever the party leader decides.
- c. The member of the house becomes disqualified if he gives up his membership voluntarily.
- d. He is disqualified if he votes or abstains from voting against the direction of his political party.

The provisions were made so that once a member joins a party must remain loyal to it and obey party direction.

**Q. 19. "No party system is ideal for all countries in all situations". Justify the statement with four arguments.**

**Answer:** The political parties are not necessary for any country, but it is a leader who leads a nation.

1. Be it monarchy, autocracy or democracy, it is the leader of that nation who takes decisions for the nation.
2. There are many countries who have performed better than democratic nations in many aspects. These nations do not have political parties but has leader who takes decisions for the welfare of its citizens.
3. There are also monarch or autocratic countries who do not take care of their citizens and takes decisions against their welfare.

The Multiparty system was developed in India, due to its social and geographical diversity. This system has its own set of problems. No party system is ideal for all countries in all situations. Though we have many parties yet there are many problems that exists.

Hence we can say that any party system is not perfect, but it is the leaders who make it.

**Q. 20. Write a note on Indian National Congress (INC)**

**Answer:** The Indian National Congress (INC), is one of the oldest and popular parts of India.

- a. It was founded in 1885 by the leaders of the national independence struggle.
- b. It played an important role during the fight for independence with the British.
- c. The party ruled uninterrupted since independence till 1989.
- d. In 1989, it lost its popularity, due to the emergence of many other regional political parties.
- e. The INC has a centrist ideology; it promotes secularism and welfare of weaker section.

**Q. 21. What is meant by lack of internal democracy within parties? Explain.**

**Answer:** The political parties are the face of democracy. They are the ones who regulate the nation. So for any wrongdoing in our society, the parties are ultimately blamed. They need to face this because people have given them the power to govern them. Hence they are accountable to the people for their actions.

The political parties throughout the world face several problems, the first being the lack of internal democracy within the parties:

- a. The powers of the political parties are generally held with only a few people. Not every member of the party gets the chance to be the leader.

- b.** The parties do not conduct regular meeting with the members to get them informed of any proceedings further. This reduces the connection with the party.
- c.** The leaders have the greatest powers while making any decision, the rest of the members are rarely consulted, this creates the gap in ideologies.
- d.** The communication gap makes the members lose their loyalty towards the party.

**Q. 22. What is the guiding philosophy of the Communist Party of India (Marxist)?**

**Answer:** The communist party of India is one of the oldest party of the nation.

- a.** It was formed in 1925.
- b.** They rely on the principles of philosophers like Marxism and Leninism, secularism and democracy.
- c.** They are against secessionism ( Separation) and Communalism.
- d.** They believe that democracy could be achieved through parliamentary methods.
- e.** They promote the demands of the working class, farmers and the poor.

**Q. 23. “Political parties are a necessary condition for a democracy”. Analyze the statement with an example.**

**Answer:** A political party is a group of people with a similar ideology, to contest elections of a nation and form a ruling government.

A Political party is synonymous to democracy, an election is vital for any democracy to contest elections these political parties are necessary.

**They are necessary:**

- a.** The parties frame policies and agendas that are for the welfare of the entire nation. Any policy is not just directed towards a single person, but for all.
- b.** They promote their ideas for the national goods during the election and when they win they work towards it.
- c.** They put forward programmes that are for the upliftment of backward communities.

The political parties are the face of democracy. They are the ones who regulate the nation.

**Example:** In a democracy, the people and their demands play a pivotal role. These demands are raised by these parties. The parties provide the people access to the government. For any common person reaching out to any local party leader is easier than the head of the country. Hence the parties are important.

**Q. 24. About a hundred years ago, there were a few countries that had hardly any political party. Now there are a few countries that do not have political parties. Examine the statements.**

**Answer:** A political party is a group of people with a similar ideology, to contest elections of a nation and form a ruling government. Every member of a particular party works on the same front, their methods might differ but their aim is the same.

**a.** Century ago there were few countries that had political parties but now every country except few have political parties, who contest the elections and forms government to run the country.

**b.** A Political party is synonymous to democracy, as the election is vital for any democracy to contest elections these political parties are necessary.

**c.** Today almost every country whether big, small, developed or developing have political parties.

**d.** The parties in these countries increased due to democracy. Many countries found democracy as a better way of governance.

**e.** Any large society needs representative democracy, and for this, they need agencies that could gather information about the happenings in the nation. This work is done by the parties and its members.

**f.** To run a nation, formulation of policies are important which is done by the parties.

The above characteristics of the political parties attracted the world and lead to the emergence of the party system in the countries.

# Outcomes of Democracy

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Give any two characteristics of democracy.**

**Answer:** The following characteristics of democracy are:

- Democracy means the rule of people. It means a representative is directly or indirectly elected by people rules the democratic country.
- Each adult whose age is above 18 years ago irrespective of caste, religion, gender or any other discrimination cast one vote which has equal value.
- The elections should be held regularly (i.e. after a fixed period of time), freely and fairly.
- All the political parties and citizens have freedom of speech and expression.
- A representative of the country which is elected by people should take a decision within the limit of constitutional laws and citizens' right (i.e. rule of law).

**Q. 2. What is the meaning of transparency?**

**Answer:** Literal meaning of transparency in a democracy is disclosure. When any decision made or meetings held by the government is open to discussion for citizens of the country, and when any budget approved by the government is open to examination, to check whether it is beneficial for their country or not, it is termed as transparency.

**Q. 3. Name the factors on which economic growth of democracy depends.**

**Answer:** Economic growth is termed as an increase in market value of goods and services produced per capita by the economy over a period of time. Democracy is very much responsible and important for the development of a nation, but it does not guarantee that. It depends on the following factors:

**Education:** To increase economic growth, the population of the country must be educated as increased skills by the education will produce more goods and services, resulting in an increase in economic growth.

**Health facilities:** There should be adequate health facilities to ensure the good health of the population of the country to increase economic growth.

**Political will or economic priorities:** Government should have the desire to spend money on the education and health facilities of the citizens and make policies accordingly.

**Non- discrimination:** There should not be any discrimination based on religion, caste, gender etc. and everybody should be provided equal opportunity based on their skills.

Other factors can be the global situation, cooperation from other countries etc.

**Q. 4. What are the inequalities of a democratic system?**

**Answer:** Absence of equal opportunities, equal treatment and equal status at any level, social, economic or political is known as inequality. Democracy is very much responsible and important for the development of a nation, but it does not guarantee that. In actual life, democracy is not able to reduce economic inequality or poverty in the democratic country. A small number of rich people have a large proportion of the country's wealth. On the other hand, the income of a large number of poor people keeps on declining. It is becoming difficult for them to meet their daily needs like food, cloth etc. Despite the fact that poor people hold a large number of votes, they are not addressed by the government as they should be. Lack of proper implementation of policies made by the government to combat poverty is the major reason for the higher economic inequalities.

**Q. 5. Which form of governments has the ability to handle social difference, division, and conflicts?**

**Answer:** In a democratic government, we can handle social difference, division, and conflicts. Social differences are the situations where people are discriminated based on the social, economic, and racial inequality whereas Social division means the division of society on the basis of social differences like language, region, caste, colour, race, and sex. Conflicts are the difference in the opinion and thoughts among the people of the different region, caste, colour, race etc. These problems can be handled by democratic government and society because, in democracy, we all have equal citizens' right which do not allow any type of discrimination and also the government is accountable for all these conflicts and differences.

**Q. 6. What does 'Dignity' signify?**

**Answer:** The literal meaning of 'Dignity' is respect. Dignity in democracy signifies that every individual should be treated with respect and he should treat others with respect too. It should be maintained by every citizen.

**Q. 7. How can democracy adjust the equal treatment of women?**

**Answer:** Democracy provides right to equality, equality before the law, equal opportunities for work and prohibition of discrimination on the grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth. In this way, it can adjust the equal treatment of women.

**Self Assessment****Q. 1. What do democracies ensure regarding decision-making?**

**Answer:** Democracies ensure the right of the citizen to choose the representative of the country directly or indirectly who will take all the decisions and have control over that. Democracies also ensure the process of transparency in decision making. Any individual can question the decisions made by a ruler or government and check whether it is beneficial for the country or not.

**Q. 2. In which manner democracies ensure decision-making?**

**Answer:** Democracies ensure the right of the citizen to choose their representative of the country directly or indirectly who will take all the decisions and have control over that. Democracies also ensure the process of transparency in decision making. Any individual can question the decisions made by a ruler or government and check whether it is beneficial for the country or not.

**Q. 3. "Within democracies, varying rate of economic growth is usually found?"**

**Answer:** Economic growth is termed as an increase in market value of goods and services produced per capita by the economy over a period of time. It depends on the following factors:

**Education:** To increase economic growth, the population of the country must be educated as increased skills by the education will produce more goods and services, resulting in an increase in economic growth.

**Health facilities:** There should be adequate health facilities to ensure the good health of the population of the country to increase economic growth.

**Political will or economic priorities:** Government should have the desire to spend money on the education and health facilities of the citizens and make policies accordingly.

**Non- discrimination:** There should not be any discrimination based on religion, caste, gender etc. and everybody should be provided equal opportunity based on their skills.

Other factors can be the global situation, cooperation from other countries etc.

**Q. 4. What are the features that are common to most of the democracies?**

**Answer:** The following features of democracy are:

- ◆ Democracy means the rule of people. It means a representative is directly or indirectly elected by people rules the democratic country.
- ◆ Each adult whose age is above 18 years ago irrespective of caste, religion, gender or any other discrimination cast one vote which has equal value.
- ◆ The election should be held regularly (i.e. after a fixed period of time), freely and fairly.
- ◆ All the political parties have freedom of speech and expression.
- ◆ A representative of the country which is elected by people should take a decision within the limit of constitutional laws and citizens' right (i.e. the rule of law).

**Q. 5. Define a responsive government?**

**Answer:** Democracies ensure the right of the citizen to choose their representative of the country directly or indirectly who will take all the decisions and have control over that. Democracies also ensure the process of transparency in decision making. Any individual can question the decisions made by a ruler or government and check whether it is beneficial for the country or not. The democratic government is a responsive government as it is responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens. It is the most basic outcome of democracy.

**Q. 6. What do you mean by accountable government?**

**Answer:** Democracies ensure the right of the citizen to choose their representative of the country directly or indirectly who will take all the decisions and have control over that. Democracies also ensure the process of transparency in decision making. Any individual can question the decisions made by a ruler or government and check whether it is beneficial for the country or not. The democratic government is an accountable government as it is accountable to the citizens for every decision made by them which can affect the interest of the people. It is the most basic outcome of democracy.

**Q. 7. How can democracy adjust the dignity of women?**

**Answer:** The literal meaning of 'Dignity' is respect. Dignity in democracy signifies that every individual should be treated with respect and he should treat others with respect too. It should be maintained by every citizen. Democracy provides right to equality, equality before the law, equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination on the grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth. In this way, it can adjust the dignity of women.

**Q. 8. Can democracy reduce poverty?**

**Answer:** In actual life, democracy is not able to reduce economic inequality or poverty in the democratic country. A small number of rich people have a large proportion of the country's wealth. On the other hand, the income of a large number of poor people keeps on declining. It is becoming difficult for them to meet their daily needs like food, cloth etc. Despite the fact that poor people hold a large number of votes, they are not addressed by the government as they should be. Lack of proper implementation of policies made by the government to combat poverty is the major reason for the higher economic inequalities.

**Q. 9. Why are democracies unable to reduce economic inequalities?**

**Answer:** In actual life, democracy is not able to reduce economic inequality or poverty in the true sense. A small number of rich people have a large proportion of the country's wealth. On the other hand, the income of a large number of poor people keeps on declining. It is becoming difficult for them to meet their daily needs like food, cloth etc. Despite the fact that poor people hold a large number of votes, they are not addressed by the government as they should be. Lack of proper implementation of policies made



by the government to combat poverty is the major reason for the higher economic inequalities.

**Q. 10. Explain the relationship between democracy and development.**

**Answer:** Democracy is very much responsible and important for the development of a nation but it does not guarantee that. Democracy provides right to equality, equality before law, equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth to every citizen or individual. The development of the country depends upon other factors too:

**Education:** To increase economic growth, the population of the country must be educated as increased skills by the education will produce more goods and services, resulting in an increase in economic growth.

**Health facilities:** There should be adequate health facilities to ensure the good health of the population of the country to increase economic growth.

**Political will or economic priorities:** Government should have the desire to spend money on the education and health facilities of the citizens and make policies accordingly.

**Non- discrimination:** There should not be any discrimination based on religion, caste, gender etc. and everybody should be provided equal opportunity based on their skills.

Other factors can be the global situation, cooperation from other countries etc.

**Q. 11. How can we measure democracy on the basis of its expected outcome?**

**Answer:** Democracy is a form of government which provides right to equality, equality before the law, equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination on the grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth to every citizen or individual. We can measure democracy on the following basis:

- A democratic government should be the responsive, accountable and legitimate government. It should be responsive to the needs of the needs and expectations of the citizens. It should also be accountable to all the citizens for every decision made by them which can affect the interest of the people.
- Democracy should be responsible for the economic development of the nation.
- It should reduce economic inequality and poverty.
- It should maintain dignity and freedom of all the citizens.
- A democratic government should try to accommodate the social differences and conflicts as they can never be suppressed completely.

**Q. 12. What is the issue in which democracies have failed?**

**Answer:** Democracy is a form of government which provides right to equality, equality before the law, equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination on the

grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth to every citizen or individual. The representative of the democratic government is directly or indirectly elected by the people of the country. It should address the following issues, but it is failed in doing so:

**Reducing economic inequality and poverty:** In actual life, democracy is not able to reduce economic inequality or poverty in a democratic country. A small number of rich people have a large proportion of the country's wealth. On the other hand, the income of a large number of poor people keeps on declining. It is becoming difficult for them to meet their daily needs like food, cloth etc.

**Economic growth:** Democracy is very much responsible and important for the development of a nation, but it does not guarantee that.

### **Q. 13. Examine the political outcome of democracy?**

**Answer:** The following points explain the political outcome of democracy:

- Democratic government is a responsive and legitimate government.
- Democratic government is collectively responsible and accountable to the citizens of the country.
- Democratic government promote free and fair elections.
- Democracy also promotes decision making in the processes and mechanisms of governance.
- It generates its own political support for itself.

### **Q. 14. What are the features of a good democracy?**

**Answer:** The following features of democracy are:

- Democracy means the rule of people. It means a representative is directly or indirectly elected by people rules the democratic country.
- Each adult whose age is above 18 years ago irrespective of caste, religion, gender or any other discrimination cast one vote which has equal value.
- The election should be held regularly (i.e. after a fixed period of time), freely and fairly.
- All the political parties have freedom of speech and expression.
- A representative of the country which is elected by people should take a decision within the limit of constitutional laws and citizens' right (i.e. the rule of law).
- In Democracy, the government is collectively responsible to the citizens of the country.
- Democratic government is a responsive, accountable and legitimate government.

### **Q. 15. "Democracies are not free from evils". Explain.**

**Answer:** Yes democracies are not free from evils. It can be explained by these points:

- Elections are conducted in free and fairly in a democratic country at regular intervals of time, but political rights sometimes use illegal ways for winning the election. For example vote for note.
- There is a lot of corruption involved in every department of a democratic country.
- In a democratic country, there is a long delay in decision making.
- Hereditary succession of the leaders of the parties irrespective of their skills is also an evil for the development of the country.
- Sometimes the interest of large number people gets ignored due to some other benefits of the representatives.

**Q. 16. Write social dimensions of democracy.**

**Answer:** The following points explain the social dimension of democracy:

- Only Democratic government is a form of government which provides accommodation to social differences and conflicts by making everybody learn how to respect every individual's opinion as differences can never be suppressed completely.
- It ensures the dignity and freedom of every citizen irrespective of their caste, religion, gender, language or any other discrimination.
- It strengthens the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes of the society.
- Public expression of satisfaction or dissatisfaction with democracy in one of the most important outcomes of democracy.

**Q. 17. The actual performance of democracy shows a mixed result. Comment.**

**Answer:** Yes, it is true that the actual performance of democracy shows a mixed result. It has been successful in addressing some of the issues while failed in some other issues.

**It has been successful in overcoming these problems to some extent:**

- It has ensured the dignity and freedom of every citizen of country irrespective of their caste, religion, gender, language or any other discrimination. It provides right to equality, equality before law, equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination.
- Only Democratic government is a form of government which provides accommodation to social differences and conflicts by making everybody learn how to respect every individual's opinion as differences can never be suppressed completely.
- It ensures accountability and responsibility towards the interest of citizens of the country
- It has failed in addressing these problems:
- Reducing economic inequality and poverty: In actual life, democracy is not able to reduce economic inequality or poverty in a democratic country. A small

number of rich people have a large proportion of the country's wealth. On the other hand, the income of a large number of poor people keeps on declining. It is becoming difficult for them to meet their daily needs like food, cloth etc.

- Economic growth: Democracy is very much responsible and important for the development of a nation, but it does not guarantee that.

**Q. 18. How do democratic governments ensure transparency? Explain any three points.**

**Answer:** Literal meaning of transparency in a democracy is disclosure. The following points discuss transparency in democratic government.

Democratic government ensures transparency in the process of decision making.

- Right to Information Act enables every citizen of the country to have the right to information about the structure of the government and every policy and rule made by them.
- When any decision made or meetings held by the government is open to discussion for citizens of the country, and when any budget approved by the government is open to examination, to check whether it is beneficial for their country or not, it is termed as transparency.

**Q. 19. Explain how democracies lead to peaceful and harmonious life among citizens.**

**Answer:** Yes it is true that democracies lead to peaceful and harmonious life among citizens. It can be explained by the following points:

- Only Democratic government is a form of government which provides accommodation to social differences and conflicts by making everybody learn how to respect every individual's opinion as differences can never be suppressed completely.
- Democracy ensures inclusion of every group including minorities and its interests in the decision making.
- It reduces the probability of violence due to social differences and conflicts between different kinds of people.
- It provides right to equality, equality before law, equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth to every citizen or individual.
- It also ensures various other fundamental rights of the citizen.

**Q. 20. What are the factors which are responsible for the economic development of the country?**

**Answer:** Economic growth is termed as an increase in market value of goods and services produced per capita by the economy over a period of time. Democracy is very

much responsible and important for the development of a nation but it does not guarantee that. It depends on the following factors:

- **Education:** To increase economic growth, the population of the country must be educated as increased skills by the education will produce more goods and services, resulting in an increase in economic growth.
- **Health facilities:** There should be adequate health facilities to ensure the good health of the population of the country to increase economic growth.
- **Political will or economic priorities:** Government should have the desire to spend money on the education and health facilities of the citizens and make policies accordingly.
- **Non- discrimination:** There should not be any discrimination based on religion, caste, gender etc. and everybody should be provided equal opportunity based on their skills.
- Other factors can be the global situation, cooperation from other countries etc.

#### **Q. 21. What sustains democracy in India?**

**Answer: India is a democratic country. It is sustained by:**

**Constitution:** It ensures the fundamental rights of every citizen of the country and defines the responsibility of the government. It makes the government accountable to citizens.

**Supreme Court:** It is one of the pillars of the country. It ensures the validity of the constitution and acts as a guardian of the constitution.

**Press and electronic media:** It helps in ensuring accountability by making people aware of the policies made by the government and any wrong deeds done by then.

**Election Commission:** It ensures that elections should be held freely and fairly and at regular intervals of time.

**Parliament and State legislature:** The ministers of the cabinet are collectively responsible to the parliament which in turn ensures accountability to the citizens.

#### **Q. 22. What are the ways in which people can participate in democracy?**

**Answer:** Democracy is a form of government which provides right to equality, equality before the law, equal opportunities of work and prohibition of discrimination on the grounds of religion, race, caste, gender or place of birth to every citizen or individual. The representative of the democratic government is directly or indirectly elected by the people of the country. In the following ways people can participate in democracy:

- By using his power of electing any representative who is beneficial for the country and vote for him.
- By participating in public political debates which can influence a large number of people in the right direction.

- By challenging any wrong decision of the government in the courts and asking for remedy by the judiciary.
- By exercising his fundamental rights and right to information to check the rules made by the government.
- By accessing any information regarding government policies and decisions in newspapers, magazines and examining its outcome.

**Q. 23. ‘Democracies accommodate social diversities’ Support the statement with examples.**

**Answer:** Democracies have certain methods to accommodate social divisions. This helps in maintaining unity and eliminating social tensions. Democracy does not mean rule by majoritarian. They have to accommodate the interests of minority to remain a democracy. India is one example of a democracy which accommodates people of different religion, castes, language, backgrounds, etc. It is a fundamental right of the people to preserve their culture and practices associated with it.

**Q. 24. The democracy has been evolved through struggles and movements all over the world. ” Support the statements with examples.**

**Answer:** Yes indeed democracy has been evolved through struggles and movements all over the world. It is possible that some demand can be accepted by the government easily but there some of the demands of the interest of the people which give rise to conflicts between government and people. This is more significant when the country is moving towards the democratic form of government or when democracy is expanding. Some of the examples are the struggle in Nepal was to establish the democracy but the movement in Bolivia involved claim on democratic government. In both the movements, mass mobilization was involved and political conflict was the reason.

# Challenges to Democracy

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Name two main factors which pose serious challenges democracy.**

**Answer:** The two main factors are:

**(i) Illiteracy:** Illiteracy poses serious problems because many people are uneducated and ignorant about their basic rights and the constitution of India.

**(ii) Poverty:** Poverty hampers the principles of democracy where every man, woman, and child must be treated equally because there is an unequal distribution of income and unemployment. These are the major causes of poverty.

**Q. 2. Name the countries which face challenges of expansion.**

**Answer:** The countries which face the challenges of expansion are USA and India because they have a large population and several states and social groups. India has managed to tackle the problem of expansion by providing seats in jobs and educational institutions for Scheduled Castes(SC) and Scheduled Tribes(ST), reserving seats for women in the Parliament by passing a bill in the Rajya Sabha, adopting principles of federalism in democracy, protection of rights of minority groups through Fundamental Rights etc.

**Q. 3. Why there is no unique list of desirable reforms?**

**Answer:** The laws of a country play an important role in bringing about reforms. But, laws alone cannot resolve challenges, democratic reforms are to be carried out mainly by political activists, parties, movements and politically conscious citizens.

The greatest challenge that India faces is of corruption. Corruption is rampant in all government departments and the few clean politicians are lost in the multitude of corrupt politicians.

Part from that, people are divided on the basis of caste and religion. You cannot have reforms implemented unless people and politicians overcome the barriers of caste and religion.

**Q. 4. State one guideline which can be kept in mind while devising ways for political reforms in India.**

**Answer:** One guideline which can be kept in mind while devising ways for political reforms in India is that any proposal for political reform must include the process of implementation to ensure its success. Only a process of implementation can ensure the success of the political reform. For example, getting the right people to carry out the

reforms, like, political activists, movements and politically conscious citizens. Each one must know his/her duty and fulfil them accordingly.

**Q. 5. Which law acts as a watchdog of democracy?**

**Answer:** The Right to Information law acts as the watchdog of democracy, as it entitles citizens to information about the activities of the government and question inefficiencies. Such a law helps to control corruption by making the activities of the government known to the people and entitling them to raise questions.

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. Name the act which empowers the people to find out what is going on in the government?**

**Answer:** The Right to Information Act empowers the people to know the activities of the government and question the policies of political parties. It also acts as a watchdog of democracy as it controls corruption by monitoring and keeping records of the activities of the government and making it known to the people.

**Q. 2. How many countries in the world have a democratic form of government?**

**Answer:** 123 out of 192 countries in the world have a democratic form of government. All these are ruled by a democracy where power rests in the hands of the people who may elect representatives, are entitled to know the activities of the government, have equal rights and privileges, etc. For example, India has the most populous democracy in the world.

**Q. 3. How can democratic reforms be carried out?**

**Answer:** Democratic reforms can be carried out in the following manner:

(i) By increasing and improving the quality of participation by ordinary citizens in political matters.

(ii) Right to Recall, which was introduced in Lok Sabha, allows the citizens to replace any government office holder.

(iii) Independent media to question the policies of political parties.

(iv) The reforms must be carried out by political activists and politically conscious people

All these are necessary to uphold the principles of democracy and carry out reforms, ensuring its success.

**Q. 4. Mention any two constitutional provisions that make India a secular state.**

**Answer:** Two constitutional provisions that make India a secular state are:



**(i) Right to Freedom of Religion:** One of the rights in the Indian Constitution is the Right to Freedom. It states that every citizen of India has the right to freedom of religion or the right to follow any religion or belief of their choice. They are free to practice and spread their religion without fear of violence or intolerance.

**(ii) Cultural and Educational Rights:** Right to education is one of the most important provisions in the Indian Constitution. This right states that every citizen of India has a right to receive education at any educational institution and will not be denied admission in the same. There will be no discrimination based on religion, race, caste, creed or language.

Cultural Rights provides the right to develop and preserve any culture or language as long as it is not imposed on any section of the society.

**Q. 5. Name any two challenges to the working of democracy in India.**

**Answer:** Two challenges to the working of democracy are:

**(i) Corruption:** Corruption occurs when government officials use their position and authority to serve their own interests and engage in bribery, embezzlement, nepotism, favouritism etc. All these practices lower the morals and undermine the principles of democracy.

**(ii) Communalism:** Communalism occurs when people of the same religion, culture have similar economic, political and social interests. Thus, such communities have diverging interests and ideologies which can clash with the interests of another community. The political parties often use such situations to further their own interests, adding to the tension.

**Q. 6. How much part of the globe is still not under the democratic government?**

**Answer:** 1/4th of the globe is not under a democratic government. The reason is that these countries face foundational challenges of transitioning to a democracy. It also involves bringing down the existing government which proves to be economically, socially and politically difficult. Myanmar was facing foundational problems while it was making the transition, but now it has successfully initiated a democratic government, by tackling the dominating influence of the military on the government.

**Q. 7. Suggest a desirable condition that a good democracy should have.**

**Answer:** A desirable condition that a good democracy should have is that all elections should be conducted in a free and fair manner. Conducting impartial and unbiased elections is very significant in the formation of a good democratic government. Electing genuine, good-willed, and hardworking candidates is very rewarding to the success of democracy.

**Q. 8. Is democracy a brutal rule of the majority?**

**Answer:** According to the principles of democracy, majority rule should be a means of organizing the government and taking legal actions without depriving the minority groups of their basic rights or privileges. It implies that the will of the majority if considered must not exclude any minority community. In India, however this is a challenge because most citizens believe that and if a political party gains popularity in any part of government then their will is legal and ultimate. The will of minorities is shaped largely by the will of a single political party due to their ignorance or reluctance to participate in the political decisions or overpowering influence of parties.

**Q. 9. If all the decisions of a political party are made by a single family, and all other members are neglected, then what challenge is being faced by that party?**

**Answer:** There will be a dictatorship, lack of integrity or unity among the members, and no common interests if all the decisions of a political party are made by a single family. All decisions must, therefore, be made by and in the presence of all members of the party to prevent conflict of interests, rivalry, strikes, etc. which will also affect the daily routines of the public masses.

**Q. 10. What is 'democracy reform' or 'democratic reform' or 'Political reform'?**

**Answer:** Institutional changes that aim to improve the quality of democracy that is practiced to empower the citizens and overcome challenges of democracy are known as Democratic reforms.

**Q. 11. Discuss the major challenges to democracy.**

**Answer:** The major challenges to democracy are:

**(i) Foundational Challenge:** One-fourth of the world still doesn't have a democratic form of government. These countries face this challenge while changing into a democratic government. This involves major steps like establishing a sovereign state and mowing down the non-democratic authorities. Systems will take years to change as they have taken years to develop initially. Nepal, for instance, recently changed to democracy but is yet to develop in many ways.

**(ii) Challenge of Expansion:** The challenge of expansion is faced by most democracies because it involves giving greater power to the local governments, including women and minority groups, etc., thereby applying the principles of democracy to all regions, societies, and communities. In India, for instance, some economically backward communities are yet to get political powers which clearly demonstrate the challenge of expansion.

**(iii) Deepening of Democracy:** This challenge involves strengthening the organizations and practices of democracy, usually happening in a way that people can realize their expectations of it. Due to their varying expectations in different societies, however, it is becoming difficult especially in the case of elections.

**Q. 12. What do you understand by 'regionalism'?**

**Answer:** Regionalism is a political ideology that focusses on developing a political system based on one or more regions. It aims to strengthen loyalty to a distinct region. It prioritizes local interests over national interests. It can be positive and negative. Positive regionalism means love towards one's culture, language, and region whereas negative regionalism is an excessive attachment to a single region, thereby posing a threat to the unity and integrity of the country.

**Q. 13. How is 'deepening of democracy' a major challenge to modern democracies? Explain.**

**Answer:** 'Deepening of democracy' requires the institutions that uphold democracy to become more transparent in their methods and functioning and being more responsive to the needs of the citizens of the country. There also has to be an attempt to bring down the influence of the domination of rich and powerful people in making governmental decisions. This is a major challenge to democracy because it involves a commitment to the true values of democracy, through the distribution of powers to local governments.

**Q. 14. Mention the major types of challenges which most of the democracies of the world are facing?**

**Answer:** The major challenges that most of the democracies are facing are as follows:

(i) Elections are not free and fair due to corruptive practices by political parties and authority figures.

(ii) Economic inequality, problems of centralization due to diverse races, ethnic groups, religions, and inadequate understanding complexity of modern societies lead to challenges in implementing democratic principles.

(iii) The inefficiency of political leaders who are self-serving, opportunists who spend time strengthening their own positions instead of attending to the needs of the people. This earns their mistrust in political parties and the government as a whole.

(iv) Democracies do not offer political instability as the government is frequently elected, there are numerous changes in policies in domestic and international subjects, business and immigration which hinder economic growth significantly.

**Q. 15. What are the steps that can be taken for the removal of poverty in India?**

**Answer:** Some steps that can be taken by the government for removal of poverty are:

(i) **Population Control:** To remove poverty, active steps must be taken to control rapid population growth through awareness programs on family planning.

(ii) **Employment:** Problems of unemployment and disguised unemployment must be solved. Development of agriculture, cottage industries in rural areas will benefit the livelihood of various farmers.

**(iii) Distribution of Income:** The inequality in the distribution of income should be reduced to decrease poverty. Every worker must receive income as per his/her labor. There should also be no inequalities between the income of men and women for the same kind of labor.

**(iv) Illiteracy:** Illiteracy is a serious problem in India which leads to immense poverty in rural areas. Schools and colleges must be opened in rural areas to educate villagers about the evils of poverty, over-population, and open new opportunities in the professional fields.

**(v) Basic facilities:** Minimum needs of the poor should be fulfilled by providing basic amenities like clean drinking water, health care, and sanitation, along with educational facilities.

**Q. 16. "Different countries face a different kind of challenges". Support the statement with suitable examples.**

**Answer:** Different countries face a different kind of challenges to democracy as they depend on the stage of development in the socio-economic sphere.

1. Ordinary people may have different expectations from democracy in different countries. Every country has a unique situation which must be handled differently. For example, well-established democracies like that of USA, minority groups have gained equal rights but still suffer from poverty, marginalization, racism etc.

2. In Saudi Arabia, women are still restricted from participating in public activities and minority groups lack freedom of religion.

3. India faces the challenge of over-population which breeds further problems like illiteracy, unemployment, unequal distribution of wealth etc. Other challenges include terrorism which still grips modern democracies across the world.

**Q. 17. What are the guidelines to be kept in mind while adopting political reforms?**

**Answer:** The following guidelines should be kept in mind while adopting political reforms:

**(i)** Laws which empower people to carry out democratic reforms, like the Right to Information Act, help to control corruption.

**(ii)** Ordinary citizens should have an active political participation in the process of democratic formation.

**(iii)** Democratic reforms should be carried out by political parties, movements, and conscious citizens.

**(iv)** Any legal change must be productive in its political approach.

**(v)** Any proposal for political reforms must consider the agents of its implementation for its success.

**Q. 18. How are challenge to democracy linked to the possibility of political reforms.**

**Answer:** Democracy is the prominent form of government in the modern world, but it faces some major challenges. They are Challenge of Expansion, Deepening of Democracy and Challenge of Foundation. Every challenge is linked with the possibility of political reforms because through successful reformation, democracy can see a brighter future in politics. For example, the Right to Information Act, makes the results of the legal actions clear to the people, ensuring that the principles of democracy. Political reforms also strengthen the participation of the people and prevent exploitation of political power by the rich and powerful.

**Q. 19. List out the demerits of democracy.**

**Answer:** While it seems that democracy is the ideal form of government, there the demerits are:

**(i) Corruption:** Democracies give rise to corruption. Political compromises are made, and the coalition are formed breaking the unity and integrity between political parties. Power and privileges are distributed to supporters of various dominions while the deserving candidates are deprived.

**(ii) Inefficiency:** Democracies also lead to inefficiency as the political leaders are busy strengthening their position and authority by forming alliances with other parties instead of doing their jobs in the administration. Legal actions and decisions are often taken without proper implementation.

**(iii) Expensive:** A Democratic form of government places heavy burdens on taxes. Elections for various offices in the government, the election machinery, etc., are all expensive to maintain and time-consuming. It can lead to inefficiency.

**(iv) Quantity over Quality:** Equality in a democracy treats everyone equally despite their intellect or potential. Due to this, self-serving and opportunist people find their way into the government while genuine people shy away from elections or fall behind. Majority rule also enables the rule of numerous rather than wise.

**Q. 20. Which is the most popular form of government in the contemporary world?**

**Answer:** Democracy is the most popular form of government in the contemporary world because of the following reasons:

**(i)** It allows us to select our representatives through elections.

**(ii)** It also ensures that every citizen is entitled to basic fundamental rights.

**(iii)** Minority groups do not face any discrimination as their needs are given serious consideration

(iv) It has better governance due to transparency and laws that make the legal actions taken by the government clear to ordinary people

(v) Basic principles of democracy include freedom and equality

(vi) Democracies prevent war against other countries with a democratic form of government

**Q. 21. How is Myanmar facing the foundation challenge of making a transition to democracy? Explain.**

**Answer:** Myanmar has suffered from a brutal military rule. It has resulted in the massacre of innocent people, arrests of activists of democracy and ordinary people. Most of the sufferings of the citizens of Myanmar include violation of human rights, corruption, economic depression, religious violence etc.

In recent times, Myanmar is ushering a new kind of government which is a democracy to ensure that its minority groups get their basic rights. Elections were conducted on November 8th, 2015, where the National League for Democracy party, led by Aung San Suu Kyi, was victorious. She states that, for the success of democracy, economic inequalities should be addressed. In this context, there are constant arguments between the NLD and the military on persuasive military influence within the government and the society. The new government will prevent violence against the minority group of Rohingya as well as other ethnic groups.

**Q. 22. Discuss some ways and means for political reforms in India.**

**Answer: (i)** Laws should be made to keep track of the activities of the political parties, by maintaining records of members, hold free and fair elections etc.

**(ii)** The rate of public participation in the policies and decisions in the democratic government should be increased in order to reform politics according to the principles of democracy.

**Q. 23. Describe any three factors that are responsible reforms in India.**

**Answer:** Some of the factors responsible for reforms in India are as below:

**1. Modern Education:** There is no discrimination in acquiring education in modern times. Everyone can avail it. People have become aware of their rights and duties.

**2. Transport and communication:** With increased means of transport and communication, ideas and knowledge is shared along with cultural values which lead to intermingling of people of different backgrounds. This gives an idea of modern practices.

**3. Awareness:** With ever increasing media and reform movements, people are more aware of the correctness of certain practices. This helps in differentiating between the right and the wrong and forming an opinion.

**Q. 24. “Most established democracies face a challenge of expansion.” Comment.**

**Answer:** Most established democracies face the challenge of expansion because local governments are granted greater power, minority groups and women are given rights and included in the democratic activities of the government. It also involves the mass participation of various institutions, regions, and communities and implementing democratic principles in all these spheres. It also means that decisions should be made with the participation of ordinary citizens.

**Q. 25. What is called ‘democratic reforms’? By whom these are to be carried out? What does ‘legal ways of reforming politics’ imply?**

**Answer:** Democratic reforms refer to the changes made to resolve challenges to democracy and ensures that its principles are followed. They are carried out by political parties, movements, activists, and politically conscious people. Legal ways of reforming politics imply that a legal change must empower the citizens. Laws like Right to Recall and Right to Information must be passed to assess the activities of political parties, like the list of members, political agendas, electoral lists, etc. to prevent corruption. Courts must pass judgments related to corruptive practices quickly to resolve conflicts and scams. Also, media should be given independence to question parties and leaders on various matters.

# Economics

<b>Chapter Name</b>	<b>Pg.No.</b>
<b>Development</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>Sectors of Indian Economy</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>Money and Credit</b>	<b>213</b>
<b>Globalization &amp; Indian Economy</b>	<b>223</b>
<b>Consumer Rights</b>	<b>239</b>



# Development

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Which position was occupied by India in terms of HDI in Human Development Report, 2014?**

**Answer:** The Human Development Report published by UNDP compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income. India occupied the 130th position on the list out of the 188 countries in the Human Development Report, 2014.

**Q. 2. Which index is used to compare the nutritional level?**

**Answer:** The index that is used to compare nutritional level is called Body Mass Index (BMI), and it is derived from the weight (mass) and height of an individual. The BMI is defined as the body mass divided by the square of the body height and is universally expressed in units of  $\text{kg/m}^2$ , resulting from the mass in kilograms and height in meters. It categorizes individuals as underweight, normal weight, overweight or obese based on the derived value.

**Q. 3. What aims for maintaining the natural resources for the present as well as the future for consistent economic development?**

**Answer:** Sustainable development aims for maintaining the natural resources for the present as well as the future generations for consistent economic development. Economy and society of any country depend on the available natural resources, and currently, a massive amount of depletion is occurring of said natural resources. Hence it is imperative that this depletion is arrested so that development can continue without any hindrance. Sustainable development fulfils this requirement through proper utilization of resources with special emphasis on maintaining a balance between the various players involved in the development.

**Q. 4. Which neighbouring country of India is ahead of it in HDI ranking?**

**Answer:** The Human Development Report published by UNDP compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income. India occupied the 131st position on the list out of the 188 countries in the Human Development Report, 2016. Its neighbouring country, Sri Lanka had the 73rd rank on the same list.

**Q. 5. Which states or regions are fast depleting their groundwater reserves?**

**Answer:** The water that is found under the ground in the cracks and spaces in the soil, sand or rocks is called groundwater. It is utilized as drinking water, for crop irrigation, and in industries. Around 300 districts in India have reported a lowering in the level of

the groundwater by over 4 meters in the past 20 years. This decline is particularly observed in the agriculturally prosperous regions of Punjab and western Uttar Pradesh, hard rock plateau areas of central and south India, certain coastal areas as well as the rapidly growing urban centres.

## **Self Assessment**

### **Q.1 .What do you understand by the term life expectancy?**

**Answer:** Life expectancy in its simplest form means the average period that a person may expect to live. It is a statistical measure of the average time span an individual is expected to live based on the year of its birth, its current age and other demographic factors including gender. Life expectancy is one of the factors in measuring the Human Development Index of each nation.

### **Q. 2. Name the state in India having the lowest Infant Mortality Rate.**

**Answer:** Infant Mortality Rate (or IMR) indicates the number of children that die before the age of one year as a proportion of 1000 live children born in that particular year. The state of Kerala has the lowest Infant Mortality Rate in India where 12 children died before the age of one year as a proportion of 1000 live children born in 2015 – 2016.

### **Q. 3. If the body mass Index is more than 25, then what the person would we considered?**

**Answer:** The Body Mass Index is defined as the body mass divided by the square of the body height and is universally expressed in units of  $\text{kg/m}^2$ , resulting from the mass in kilograms and height in meters. It categorizes individuals as underweight, normal weight, overweight or obese based on the derived value. An individual with a BMI of more than 25 will be considered to be overweight.

### **Q. 4. Write were limitations of the average value.**

**Answer:** In development, the average value is often used to compare different countries with respect to their income. Since different countries have different populations, total income does not work as a good comparative measure. Average value of income is derived by dividing the total income of the country by the total population and is also called per capita income. Although average income is used for comparison purposes, it is not an absolute measure as it can hide disparities as it does not state whether the income distribution is equitable or not. In the following table, we see the income distribution of two different countries.

	Monthly Income in Rupees					Average Income
	Citizen A	Citizen B	Citizen C	Citizen D	Citizen E	
Country A	10, 000	1000	4000	3000	2000	4000
Country B	2000	4000	5000	5000	3000	3800

From the above table, it is evident that Country A enjoys a higher average income than country B. But Country B has a more equitable distribution of income than country A. Thus, the average value is limited as it does not provide a clear picture.

**Q. 5. Suggest one measure to ensure sustainable development in the energy sector.**

**Answer:** Sustainable development aims for maintaining the natural resources for the present as well as the future generations for consistent economic development. In the energy sector, sustainable development can arrest the rapid depletion of conventional resources. Finite nature of conventional resource forms like fossil fuels makes it imperative that resources are conserved to expand the time span of usage.

**Q. 6. What is human development Index?**

**Answer:** The Human Development Index (HDI) is a summary measure of average achievement in key dimensions of human development: a long and healthy life, being knowledgeable and have a decent standard of living. It is the statistical composite index of life expectancy, education and per capita income indicators and is used to rank countries into four different tiers of human development. Indian economist Amartya Sen along with Pakistani economist Mahbub ul Haq developed this index, and it is used by the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) to measure a country's development. According to this index, India occupied the 130th position on the list out of the 188 countries in the Human Development Report, 2014.

**Q. 7. What will happen if we over-exploit underground water in arid regions of India?**

**Answer:** The water that is found under the ground in the cracks and spaces in the soil, sand or rocks is called groundwater. It is utilized as drinking water, for crop irrigation, and in industries. Arid regions of India are characterized by limited sources of surface water as well as low precipitation rates. Hence, they have a major dependence on groundwater for domestic and agricultural requirements. If overexploitation of this source occurs, it will have serious consequences on the economy and social life of the region.

A lowering in the groundwater level would lead to increased costs in pumping for the same which cannot be afforded by everyone. Lowering of groundwater levels will also lead to increased salinization which would ultimately affect the water quality and render

it unusable in the future. This can lead to a lowering in agricultural production in the area, leading to food shortage and drought.

**Q. 8. In which category, India was placed in the World Development Report, 2012?**

**Answer:** The World Development Report (WDR) is an annual report published since 1978 by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) or World Bank. It provides an in-depth analysis of various aspects of economic development. One aspect that it uses is per capita income which is the total income of the country divided by its total population. According to the World Development Report of 2012, India was placed in the low middle-income countries group as its per capita income was less than 1005 dollars.

**Q. 9. Among Maharashtra, Kerala and Bihar which state has least per capita income?**

**Answer:** Per capita income is the total income of the country divided by its total population. At the state level, it is the total income of the state divided by its total population. The following table gives the per capita income for three states of India for the 2015-2016 time period.

State	Per Capita Income for 2015 -2016 (in Rupees)
Maharashtra	1,80,596
Kerala	1,55,516
Bihar	34,168

From the above table, it is evident that Bihar has the least per capita income between the three states.

**Q. 10. Why do we use averages?**

**Answer:** In development, the average value is often used to compare different countries with respect to their income. Since different countries have different populations, total income does not work as a good comparative measure. Average value of income is derived by dividing the total income of the country by the total population and is also called per capita income. Although average income is used for comparison purposes, it is not an absolute measure as it can hide disparities as it does not state whether the income distribution is equitable or not.

**Q. 11. Why are public facilities needed for the development of the country?**

**Answer:** Public facilities are defined as those basic services which cannot be supplied directly to the individual dwelling unit and as a result are utilized away from the individual residential dwelling unit within the public environment. These facilities are provided by the government to ensure all-round development of the individual and in

extension the society as a whole. Examples of public facilities include schools, health centres/hospitals, police stations, ration shops etc. From the examples, it is evident that public facilities aim not only to educate an individual but aids the individual to gain help in terms of legal, health and nutritional needs. With individual development, society develops, and this contributes to the development of the country.

**Q. 12. What is the significance of sustainable development for a human being?**

**Answer:** Sustainable development aims for maintaining the natural resources for the present as well as the future generations for consistent economic development. For a long time, humankind has been dependent on conventional resources to propel their development. But the finite nature of such resources has created a demand and supply gap in this world which has resulted in a variety of problems that include discrepancies in development, war mongering, ill-effects on environment etc. Sustainable development aims for the controlled use of resources for greater benefits and primarily includes reduction of wastage, controlled use and increased benefits from the different resources. Thus, for human beings' sustainable development is significant as it aims to balance their economic, environmental and social needs.

**Q. 13. Explain three attributes for comparing notions of development between different countries.**

**Answer:** The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) uses three attributes to measure the Human Development Index (HDI) of a country.

(1) A long and healthy life which is measured through the expected life expectancy at birth. This provides an idea of the health of a country's citizens. Better nutrition and a disease-free childhood lead to healthy adults who are workers with higher productivity and an asset to the nation's workforce.

(2) Education Index which is measured by the mean years of schooling of people aged 25 years and above. This allows one to understand the knowledge level possessed by the workforce in a country and an indicator of the country's education-based development requirements.

(3) A decent standard of living which is measured by the Gross National Income or per capita income. This allows one to understand the purchasing power possessed by the citizens in a country. It also allows authorities to categorize countries on a development scale. Higher the per capita income, higher is the country's development.

The above three attributes present an all-round development picture for respective countries. It does not present a clear picture, and further study is needed to locate the problem areas and provide solutions that are country specific.

**Q. 14. Identify different thrust areas of Human Development.**

**Answer":** According to the UNDP, human development – or the human development approach - is about expanding the richness of human life, rather than simply the

richness of the economy in which human beings live. It is an approach that is focused on people and their opportunities and choices. Human development focuses on two important aspects –

**(a)** It tries to directly enhance human abilities. Human development achieves the direct enhancement of human abilities by focussing on a long and healthy life, being knowledgeable and by having a decent standard of living.

**(b)** It creates conditions for further human development. It achieves this by helping governments create policies and legislation to encourage participation in political and community life; through environmental sustainability; by enabling human rights and security and through ensuring gender equality.

Thus, from the above-mentioned aspects, it is clear that the thrust areas for human development include not only income aspects but the development of the whole individual. The process of human development allows individuals to develop their full potential.

**Q. 15. Discuss the value associated with public facilities.**

**Answer:** Public facilities are defined as those basic services which cannot be supplied directly to the individual dwelling unit and as a result are utilized away from the individual residential dwelling unit within the public environment. These facilities are provided by the government to ensure all-round development of the individual and in extension the society as a whole. Examples of public facilities include schools, health centres/hospitals, police stations, ration shops etc. These facilities are of immense value to the society as they are provided collectively and can be utilized for the betterment of not only individuals but also the community and in extension the country as a whole. For example, suppose a village does not have a school. When the Panchayat which is the local governing body provides a school for the area, it means that there is a chance that the literacy rate of the area will increase. This will lead to an overall increase in literacy rate. Thus, public facilities when provided and utilized in the correct manner contributes to the country's development.

**Q. 16. Explain two reasons for the need for environment-friendly economic growth and one suggestion achieve it.**

**Answer:** For a long time, humankind has been dependent on conventional resources to propel their development. But the finite nature of such resources has created a demand and supply gap in this world which has resulted in a variety of problems that include discrepancies in development, war mongering, ill-effects on environment etc. Two important reasons behind the need for environmentally friendly economic growth are as follows –

**(1)** Environment-friendly economic growth reduces environmental pollution and hence is important as environmental quality affects all species on earth.

**(2)** Environment-friendly economic growth will arrest the rapid depletion of conventional resources. Finite nature of conventional resource forms like fossil fuels makes it imperative that resources are conserved to expand the time span of usage.

Various methods can be applied to practice an environmentally friendly economic growth. One such method is the process of substitution. Development of substitutes is a major principle of resource conservation. Non-renewable energy resources like fossil fuels may be substituted with renewable energy resources.

**Q. 17. Describe the important aspects of our lives other than income.**

**Answer:** Our lives have two separate distinctive aspects. One is the material aspect; the other is the less tangible non-material aspect. The material aspect is taken care of through income. A steady flow of money allows us to buy the material things and derive satisfaction from the same. For e.g., income shall allow us to buy or rent a house which can provide us with shelter against the elements. The non-material aspect is not so easily gained. For e.g., one can desire to be healthy and put in money to achieve the goal. But without proper exercise and clean living, it cannot be achieved.

The non-material aspect cannot often be measured in absolute terms. Money can buy us a good education, but without effort and diligence on our part, the good education cannot give us the benefits. There are several non-material aspects in our lives. They include health, education, job security, participation in the political decision-making process, reduced discrimination, etc. For e.g., an out of town job can provide a better salary. But it may not provide the security along with the benefits one can gain while working in one's hometown.

For women, they further include things like empowerment, reduced gender disparity, increased dignity, safe and secure social environment. For e.g., women should be respected not only when they work outside the house, but also for the housework they do.

Thus, at an individual level, income is an important aspect in our lives. But individuals also make decisions based on other non-income aspects as it affects their lives as a whole.

**Q. 18. Compare the level of development in India taking at least three states on the basis of various aspects other than income.**

**Answer:** According to the UNDP, human development – or the human development approach – is about expanding the richness of human life, rather than simply the richness of the economy in which human beings live. The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) uses three attributes to measure the Human Development Index (HDI) of a country.

**(1)** Levels of wealth within the country as measured by GDP per capita and adjusted in purchasing power parity (PPP)

(2) Health – measured by average life expectancy

(3) Education – measured by the percentage of the population in education at a particular age (primary, secondary and tertiary) and literacy levels (educational attainment).

The above three attributes present an all-round development picture for respective countries. In India, the HDI for states can also be calculated in a similar fashion. Since different states have different populations, total income does not work as a good comparative measure. Average value of income is derived by dividing the total income of the state by the total population and is also called per capita income. Although average income is used for comparison purposes, it is not an absolute measure as it can hide disparities as it does not state whether the income distribution is equitable or not. For the purpose of comparison, we are taking the Infant Mortality Rate, Literacy Rate and Net Attendance Ratio for the states of Haryana, Kerala, and Bihar. The following table gives the relevant details –

State	Infant Mortality Rate per 1000 live births (2015 -16)	Literacy Rate % (2011)	Net Attendance Ratio (per 100 persons) secondary stage (age 14 and 15 years) 2013-14
Haryana	36	82	61
Kerala	12	94	83
Bihar	42	62	43

On the basis of the above table, we can come to the following conclusions –

- Kerala is the most developed between all three states, as not only does it have a low infant mortality rate, it has high levels of literacy along with a higher ratio of its population invested in secondary education.
- Haryana comes next and measures should be taken to develop the state further.
- Bihar is the least developed of all states. It has a high infant mortality rate showing that the population does not have access to proper healthcare. Lower levels of literacy along with low attendance for secondary education is halting its development process.

If we had only considered the state per capita incomes to judge the level of development in the states, Haryana would have been the most developed state and Bihar the least developed. But when we compare the other parameters of development, it is evident that although Haryana has the money, development processes are not being implemented in a manner which would aid its overall betterment. Kerala, with a lower per capita income, is managing its development better and thus outranking Haryana. Bihar, on the other hand, seems to be stuck in a vicious cycle where lower per capita income is lowering the development, while lower education and health levels are lowering the ability of its population to earn more. Thus, Bihar needs better policies to develop itself.



**Q. 19. What is the necessity of comparing different countries or states? Give one example of a recent model of comparison.**

**Answer:** Countries or states are often classified as developed or underdeveloped depending upon several factors. These factors range from per capita income to the death rate that is currently prevalent in the region. The comparison is often taken in the negative connotation, but in reality, it provides a clear picture of where a country or state's development stands. Without comparison, It would be impossible to say whether the country or state's development is progressing or not. Comparison helps us to understand the mechanics behind this difference in development and apply well thought out solutions to rectify the issues and problems that are hampering the development process.

The simplest form in which countries or states are compared is based on the per capita income. The World Development Report (WDR) is an annual report published since 1978 by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) or World Bank. It provides an in-depth analysis of various aspects of economic development.

One aspect that it uses is per capita income which is the total income of the country divided by its total population. Countries with per capita income of US\$ 12236 per annum and above in 2016, are called rich countries and those with per capita income of US\$ 1005 or less are called low-income countries. India comes in the category of low middle-income countries because its per capita income in 2016 was just US\$ 1840 per annum. The rich countries, excluding countries of the Middle East and certain other small countries, are generally called developed countries.

**Q. 20. What is the implication of having high HDI for the country?**

**Answer:** According to the UNDP, human development – or the human development approach - is about expanding the richness of human life, rather than simply the richness of the economy in which human beings live. It is an approach that is focused on people and their opportunities and choices. Human development focuses on two important aspects –

**(a)** It tries to directly enhance human abilities. Human development achieves the direct enhancement of human abilities by focussing on a long and healthy life, being knowledgeable and by having a decent standard of living.

**(b)** It creates conditions for further human development. It achieves this by helping governments create policies and legislation to encourage participation in political and community life; through environmental sustainability; by enabling human rights and security and through ensuring gender equality.

The Human Development Index (HDI) is a summary measure of average achievement in key dimensions of human development: a long and healthy life, being knowledgeable and have a decent standard of living.

When a country has a high HDI, it essentially means that the lifespan is higher, the education levels are higher along with higher per capita income. This makes the country a developed country. Countries like USA, France Japan have high HDIs' making them developed countries.

**Q. 21. Suggest some idea to make development more sustainable in nature.**

**Answer:** Sustainable development aims for maintaining the natural resources for the present as well as the future generations for consistent economic development. Methods through which development can be made sustainable include the following –

**(a) Substitution** – Development of substitutes is a major principle of sustainable development. Non -renewable energy resources like fossil fuels may be substituted with renewable energy resources.

**(b) Recycling** – Certain resources can be recycled up to a certain limit and hence the declining trend in its quantity can be arrested for a time span. Iron is such a resource. If iron scraps are recycled in the iron and steel industry it can lower the dependence on raw iron.

**(c) Reduction of wastage** – if wastages are reduced, a greater quantity of resources are available for consumption and it will lead to resource conservation.

**(d) Development of awareness** – No conservation programme with regards to sustainable development can be successful if the people are not involved. Awareness regarding the importance of resources is imperative for its conservation.

**(e) Increased efficiency** – Increased resource demand is met by the increased functional resource value from the same quantity of resource input. For e.g., modern fuel-efficient cars can cover longer distances for the same amount of petrol.

**Q. 22. What is the main criterion used by the World Bank in classifying different countries? Describe its limitations.**

**Answer:** The World Development Report (WDR) is an annual report published since 1978 by the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) or World Bank. It provides an in-depth analysis of various aspects of economic development. The main criterion used by the World Bank in classifying different countries is per capita income which is the total income of the country divided by its total population. Countries with per capita income of US\$ 12236 per annum and above in 2016, are called rich countries and those with per capita income of US\$ 1005 or less are called low-income countries. India comes in the category of low middle-income countries because its per capita income in 2016 was just US\$ 1840 per annum. The rich countries, excluding countries of the Middle East and certain other small countries, are generally called developed countries. These include countries like the USA, France, and Japan.

**Per capita income as an indicator of development has the following limitations:**

1. Per capita income does not reflect the standard of living of the people. Since it is an average, it does not provide a fair picture regarding the income distribution between people. It can hide the fact that in spite of a high per capita income, the majority of said income is limited to a few numbers of people, making per capita income an unsatisfactory indicator of development.

2. An increase in per capita income may not raise the real standard of living of people. It is possible that while per capita real income is increasing per capita consumption of goods and services might be falling. This happens when the Govt. might itself be using up the increased income for massive military build-up necessitating the heavy production of arms and ammunition.

3. Per capita income does not reflect social development in a country. Increase in income is not synonymous with an increase in economic welfare. Thus, per capita, income fails to be an adequate measure of development.

The Human Development Index which takes education and life expectancy along with per capita income to measure development is a better indicator as it encompasses the multidimensional facets of development.

**Q. 23. Distinguish between total income and average income. Which one is a better indicator of economic development and why?**

**Answer:** The total income of a country or Gross National Income (GNI) is the total domestic and foreign income claimed by residents of a country. The average income of a country or per capita income is the total income of the country divided by its total population. Thus, while total income is an absolute measure for the size of the economy in a country, average income is the average which provides the development level of the said economy.

In development, the average value is often used to compare different countries with respect to their income. Since different countries have different populations, total income does not work as a good comparative measure. Average value of income is derived by dividing the total income of the country by the total population and is also called per capita income. Although average income is used for comparison purposes, it is not an absolute measure as it can hide disparities as it does not state whether the income distribution is equitable or not. In spite of its limitations, average income remains a better indicator of economic development in a country over total income.

**Q. 24. "For development people look at a mix of goal". Support the statements with suitable example.**

**Answer:** According to the UNDP, human development – or the human development approach - is about expanding the richness of human life, rather than simply the richness of the economy in which human beings live. It is an approach that is focused on people and their opportunities and choices. Human development focuses on two important aspects –

**(a)** It tries to directly enhance human abilities. Human development achieves the direct enhancement of human abilities by focussing on a long and healthy life, being knowledgeable and by having a decent standard of living.

**(b)** It creates conditions for further human development. It achieves this by helping governments create policies and legislation to encourage participation in political and community life; through environmental sustainability; by enabling human rights and security and through ensuring gender equality.

Our lives have two separate distinctive aspects. One is the material aspect; the other is the less tangible non - material aspect. The material aspect is taken care of through income. For e.g., income shall allow us to buy or rent a house which can provide us with shelter against the elements. The non-material aspect is not so easily gained. For e.g., one can desire to be healthy and put in money to achieve the goal. But without proper exercise and clean living, it cannot be achieved.

Thus, at an individual level, income is an important aspect in our lives. But individuals also make decisions based on other non-income aspects as it affects their lives as a whole. The process of human development allows individuals to develop their full potential. Hence, development goals will differ from individual to individual.

Someone in the lower economically developed group may only be interested in policies which would allow them to earn more. Someone in the higher economically developed group may be interested in policies that provide a better environment. None of these goals is wrong; they differ because at an individual level the requirements are different.

# Sectors of the Indian Economy

---

## Check Point 01

### **Q. 1. Which group of activities is associated with natural resources?**

**Answer:** All activities that are associated with the use of natural resources like agriculture, fishing, forestry etc. are included in the primary sector. The primary sector of the economy involves the conversion of natural resources into primary products.

### **Q. 2. Why is the secondary sector also called industrial sectors?**

**Answer:** Secondary sector is also called the industrial sector as it includes all the activities that transform raw materials into products and goods through industrial processes. It is a sector which includes those economic activities that create a finished product.

### **Q. 3. Give an example to show the interdependence of the sectors.**

**Answer:** Economic activities can be divided into three sectors – the primary sector associated with the use of natural resources, the secondary sector concerned with the processing of raw materials into products and goods, and the tertiary sector associated with service production for the benefit of the other two sectors. All three sectors are interdependent to each other. For example, cultivation of sugarcane is a primary sector activity. Processing of this sugar cane in factories to produce sugar is a secondary sector activity. Transferring of the sugarcanes to the factories and marketing and selling of the finished product (sugar) is a tertiary sector activity. Thus, the primary sector is dependent on the secondary sector for payment for the sugarcane produced. The secondary sector is dependent on the primary sector for supply of raw materials to keep up continuous production. Both these sectors are dependent on the tertiary sector for the transportation, marketing and selling of both raw materials and finished goods.

### **Q. 4. Who collects the data for GDP?**

**Answer:** GDP or Gross Domestic Product is the total value of goods produced and services provided in a country during one year and is used to measure a country's economy. The data is collected by the Central Statistics Office (CSO) that falls under the leadership of the Ministry of Statistics and Program Implementation.

### **Q. 5. BPO is an important activity of which sectors?**

**Answer:** BPO or Business process outsourcing (BPO) is a subset of outsourcing that involves the contracting of the operations and responsibilities of a specific business process to a third-party service provider. It includes human resources or finance and accounting, and customer-related services. Thus, it is evident that BPO belongs to the tertiary sector as it is associated with service production.

## **Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. Which part of the tertiary sector is growing in the importance and which part is less productive?**

**Answer:** The tertiary sector is involved in providing services. With the development and rapid urbanization, the tertiary sector has also gained importance in India. Services which employ highly skilled and educated workers have grown in importance. Growth in the healthcare sector, administrative services have boosted the growth in the tertiary sector. But the lower end of the tertiary sector which employs less skilled and lower educated personnel have been less productive. The earnings are low, but without an alternate source of employment, the workers are stuck at their current jobs. The workers include small shopkeepers, repair persons, transport persons, cattle owners etc.

**Q. 2. Name some allied-agricultural activities to need to be promoted to solve the problem of unemployment.**

**Answer:** Agricultural sector often faces underemployment or disguised unemployment in India. To eradicate such disadvantages, several allied agricultural activities need to be promoted. These include a multi-cropping system, promotion and location of agro-based industries in semi-rural and rural areas.

**Q. 3. Which act is also known as Right to work?**

**Answer:** The Indian government recognising the need to increase employment in the country has implemented a law in 625 of its districts called Right to Work. The Act Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005 (MGNREGA 2005) ensures this law and it entitles all eligible candidates under this law in the rural areas, guaranteed 100 days of employment.

**Q. 4. Write any one disadvantage of a worker in the unorganised sector over workers of the organised sector?**

**Answer:** One of the biggest disadvantages that workers in the unorganised sector face are the lack of job security as organized sector workers have secure jobs. They can be removed without any prior notice and without any notice being given. Casual workers, landless labourers, street hawkers, domestic workers, etc. fall in this category.

**Q. 5. Under which sector (organised/unorganised) would you put a labourer is working under a contractor?**

**Answer:** A labourer who is working under a contractor falls in the unorganized sector of employment. His employment does not have any rules and regulations, with low wages and no added amenities like paid leave, provident fund or mandated leaves. They can be removed without any prior notice and without any notice being given. Casual

workers, landless labourers, street hawkers, domestic workers, etc. also fall in this category.

**Q. 6. What type of industries generally you may see in the public sector?**

**Answer:** The public sector includes all the services that are fully or partly owned and maintained by the government. Public sector industries dominate in railways, mining, healthcare. Public sector operates with welfare motive, unlike the private sector which operates with a private motive.

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. What has the National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 assured?**

**Answer:** The National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 assures the Right to Work for Indian citizen, particularly rural people. It guarantees 100 days of employment in a year for the people enrolled under this scheme and in case the government fails to provide sources of employment it provides unemployment allowances.

**Q. 2. Give two examples of secondary sector activities in India.**

**Answer:** The secondary sector includes all the activities that transform raw materials into products and goods through industrial processes. Two examples of industries under the secondary sector are industries that produce a finished good like Iron and Steel industry and those involved in construction like a brick kiln.

**Q. 3. Give one example to show how the tertiary sector depends on the primary sector in rural India.**

**Answer:** The tertiary sector is involved with providing service while the primary sector includes all activities that are associated with the use of natural resources like agriculture, fishing, forestry etc. The tertiary sector employs people who need food to not only survive but also to provide the energy necessary for work performance. Primary sector grows this food through agricultural activities in rural areas. Thus, the tertiary sector is dependent on the primary sector.

**Q. 4. Name the programme which has created maximum employment in rural India in the past 5 Years.**

**Answer:** The programme that created the maximum employment in rural India in the past 5 years is an Act called the Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005 (MGNREGA 2005). The National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 assures the Right to Work for Indian citizen, particularly rural people. It guarantees 100 days of employment in a year for the people enrolled under this scheme and in case the government fails to provide sources of employment it provides unemployment allowances.

**Q. 5. Give one example of disguised unemployment.**

**Answer:** In some situations, even when people appear to be employed, they are actually unemployed as their removal from the production process does not affect the said process. These people are engaged in activities but not to their full potential. This situation is called disguised unemployment or hidden unemployment. It is present in both rural and urban areas. In rural areas, disguised unemployment is present in the agricultural sector. Owing to the family structure in India, several members of the same family may be working on the same piece of land for agricultural production. They are engaged in an activity which can be carried out by a lesser number of people as rural land holdings in India are notoriously small. Thus, they are not employed to their full potential and contributing to disguised unemployment.

**Q. 6. What are intermediate goods?**

**Answer:** An intermediate good is a product used to produce a final good or finished product. These goods are sold between industries for resale or the production of other goods. One example of an intermediate good is salt, a product that is directly consumed but also used to manufacture food products.

**Q. 7. Mention with one example how Secondary sector helps in the development of the primary sector.**

**Answer:** The primary sector includes all activities that are associated with the use of natural resources like agriculture, fishing, forestry etc. The secondary sector is concerned with the processing of raw materials into products and goods. Without the secondary sector, the primary sector would not have a market for selling their products and thereby earn income. For example, agricultural production of sugarcane is a primary sector activity. But without a secondary sector activity like mills which buy the sugarcane and process it for sugar, the sugarcane would rot, and farmers would stop production of the same.

**Q. 8. Under NREGA, how many days of work in a year guaranteed by the government?**

**Answer:** NREGA is an act established by the Indian Government to ensure the Right to Work for those citizens who find it difficult to find different means of employment. It mostly targets the rural population in India who are mainly employed in agriculture and find it difficult to get employment during the lull in cropping season. NREGA ensures 100 days of employment in a year to such citizens, failing which, the government would provide unemployment allowances.

**Q. 9. What comprise unorganised sectors in rural areas?**

**Answer:** Unorganised sectors consist of all unincorporated private enterprises owned by individuals or households engaged in the sale or production of goods and services operated on a proprietary or partnership basis and with less than ten total workers. In



rural areas, the unorganised sector comprises mainly of workers in small-scale industries, casual workers in construction, trade and transport, etc. and those who work in shops, street vendors, garment makers, rag pickers etc.

**Q. 10. What is manufacturing?**

**Answer:** Manufacturing is the making of goods by hand or by a machine that upon completion the business sells to a customer. Items used in manufacture may be raw materials or component parts of a larger product. The manufacturing usually happens on a large-scale production line of machinery and skilled labour.

**Q. 11. Explain in brief what is Gross Domestic Product (GDP). Which department carries out the task of measuring the GDP in India?**

**Answer:** GDP or Gross Domestic Product is the total value of goods produced and services provided in a country during one year and is used to measure a country's economy. A central government Ministry collects the data for calculating GDP. With the help of various government departments in the different states and union territories of India, this Ministry collects the necessary data, i.e., the total value of goods produced and services provided to estimate the GDP for India in any given year.

**Q. 12. Which sector, i.e. Primary, secondary or Tertiary comprises the largest proportion of unorganised worker? Why?**

**Answer:** Unorganised workers are those workers who are employed in the unorganised sector. In India, the primary sector activities specifically agriculture comprises the largest proportion of unorganised workers. This is because disguised unemployment is rampant in this sector. It hires people without the necessity of particular skills and the hiring is not a constant feature. Farmers tend to work on their own along with the help of their families and hire labourers as and when required. Also, because of the seasonal nature of agriculture, the hiring is not on a year-round basis but mostly during the cropping season, and the rest of the time these workers are either idle or working as construction workers, etc.

**Q. 13. Differentiate between sector on the basis of nature of activity with examples.**

**Answer:** Economic activities are related to production, distribution, exchange and consumption of goods and services. The primary aim of the economic activity is the production of goods and services with a view to making them available to the consumer. Economic activities can be differentiated into three sectors viz., primary, secondary and tertiary.

- 1.** The primary sector includes all activities that are associated with the use of natural resources like agriculture, fishing, forestry etc.
- 2.** The secondary sector is concerned with the processing of raw materials into products and goods.

**3.** The tertiary sector is involved with providing service.

All three sectors are interdependent on one another and cannot exist in isolation. For example, cultivation of sugarcane is a primary sector activity. Processing of this sugar cane in factories to produce sugar is a secondary sector activity. Transferring of the sugarcanes to the factories and marketing and selling of the finished product (sugar) is a tertiary sector activity.

Thus, the primary sector is dependent on the secondary sector for payment for the sugarcane produced. The secondary sector is dependent on the primary sector for supply of raw materials to keep up continuous production. Both these sectors are dependent on the tertiary sector for the transportation, marketing and selling of both raw materials and finished goods.

**Q. 14. Describe the role of Tertiary sectors on the basis of nature of activity with examples.**

**Answer:** Tertiary sector activities do not produce any goods but provide services that support the production process. The demand for these activities is ever-increasing. For e.g. demand for basic services like hospitals, banks, postal services, etc. have increased. It has the highest contribution in GDP of the country and employs a large number of people.

**Q. 15. Which sector has been the highest growth in term of output in recent 40 years? Discuss its three characteristics.**

**Answer:** During the 1950s and 1960s, the Indian economy depended on the agricultural sector. But in recent 40 years, in terms of output, tertiary sector has contributed significantly.

Tertiary sector activities do not produce any goods but provide services that support the production process. The demand for these activities is ever-increasing. For e.g. demand for basic services like hospitals, banks, postal services, etc. have increased. It has the highest contribution in GDP of the country and employs a large number of people.

**Q. 16. In which sector is underemployment more prevalent? Why is it so?**

**Answer:** Primary sector employs around 50% of the population, but it contributes the most to disguised unemployment. Even when people appear to be employed, they are actually unemployed as their removal from the production process does not affect the said process. These people are engaged in activities but not to their full potential. This situation is called disguised unemployment or hidden unemployment.

It is present in both rural and urban areas. In rural areas, disguised unemployment is present in the agricultural sector. Owing to the family structure in India, several members of the same family may be working on the same piece of land for agricultural production. They are engaged in an activity which can be carried out by a lesser

number of people as rural land holdings in India are notoriously small. Thus, they are not employed to their full potential and contributing to disguised unemployment.

**Q. 17. Mention any two social values that you have learnt from the working conditions of organised and unorganised sector.**

**Answer:** organised sectors consist of all unincorporated private enterprises owned by individuals or households engaged in the sale or production of goods and services operated on a proprietary or partnership basis and with less than ten total workers. In rural areas, the unorganised sector comprises mainly of workers in small-scale industries, casual workers in construction, trade and transport, etc. and those who work in shops, street vendors, garment makers, rag pickers etc.

1. They mostly belong to the backward communities
2. They work in insecure and uncertain working conditions and face social discrimination.

**Q. 18. The workers in the unorganised sector need protection on the issues of wages, safety and health. Explain.**

**Answer:** Unorganised sectors consist of all unincorporated private enterprises owned by individuals or households engaged in the sale or production of goods and services operated on a proprietary or partnership basis and with less than ten total workers. In rural areas, the unorganised sector comprises mainly of workers in small-scale industries, casual workers in construction, trade and transport, etc. and those who work in shops, street vendors, garment makers, rag pickers etc.

They have low wages, and there is no provision of overtime payment, paid holidays, etc. They work in very unsafe conditions and have no job security. They can be asked to quit at any time without any reason. More than 90% of the Indian workforce is employed in the unorganised sector which amplifies the need to provide protection on the issues of wages, safety and health.

**Q. 19. There has been a big change in the three sectors of economic activities, but a similar shift has not taken place in the share of employment. Explain the statements on the basis of facts.**

**Answer:** Primary sector employs around 50% of the population, but it contributes the most to disguised unemployment. Even when people appear to be employed, they are actually unemployed as their removal from the production process does not affect the said process. These people are engaged in activities but not to their full potential. This situation is called disguised unemployment or hidden unemployment.

Secondary and tertiary sectors have not created enough jobs to accommodate the people who have migrated from the agriculture sector. The employment in the manufacturing sector went up by only 3 times and in the services sector by 5 times.

**Q. 20. Do you think that shift from one sector's dominance to another sector's dominance in an economy is common as the economy develops?**

**Answer:** Yes, there is a shift in one sector's dominance to other as the economy develops. As there is development, there is increased investment by the government in the education and health sector. This increases the knowledge of a person, and an educated individual prefers working in the manufacturing or service sector over agriculture. With time, the number of people employed in the agriculture sector will decrease, and there will be a subsequent increase in other sectors. This results in a shift of dominance from agriculture to other sectors.

**Q. 21. How can we tackle the problem of unemployment in semi-urban areas?**

**Answer:** Employment in the semi-urban sector can be increased by following these steps:

1. Invest in industries that employ a large number of people.
2. Improve the transportation sector so that people can be employed to work in this industry.
3. Importance to vocational education so that people with the education in this field get jobs easily.

**Q. 22. The agriculture sector in India employs the largest number of people, but its contribution to national income is the lowest. Why?**

**Answer:** The primary sector employs around 50% of the population, but it contributes the most to disguised unemployment. Even when people appear to be employed, they are actually unemployed as their removal from the production process does not affect the said process. These people are engaged in activities but not to their full potential. This situation is called disguised unemployment or hidden unemployment.

It is present in both rural and urban areas. In rural areas, disguised unemployment is present in the agricultural sector. Owing to the family structure in India, several members of the same family may be working on the same piece of land for agricultural production. They are engaged in an activity which can be carried out by lesser number of people as rural land holdings in India are notoriously small. Thus, they are not employed to their full potential and contributing towards disguised unemployment.

As per 2015 estimates, agriculture contributes 16.1%, industry 29.5% and service sector 54.4% of GDP of the country. Agriculture sector's contribution to the national income is lowest due to seasonal nature of it.

# Money And Credit

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Before the advent of money, people used to follow which system of exchange.**

**Answer:** Barter system

The barter system was used as a mode of exchange before the advent of money in which a good is transferred for another good. It was done because no goods had the money or monetary value. Therefore, the goods were exchanged with each other.

**Q. 2. Currency consists of which two things?:**

**Answer:** Paper notes and coins

According to RBI, the currency consists of two things paper notes and coins. RBI is the sole authority that issues the notes and coins. Since it is issued by the RBI, it accepted as a medium of exchange in the country.

**Q. 3. How payment can be settled without the use of cash?**

**Answer:** Payments through cheque and digital money can be made without cash.

Currently, there are many modes in which transactions can be made without the use of cash. Cheque system, e-wallet, demand draft, and many other modes can be made without cash.

**Q. 4. How the bank gets money to advance loan?**

**Answer:** They accept deposit from account holders and advance the portion of the deposit as a loan.

They accept the deposit from the account holders and by keeping a portion of deposit as the ratio in RBI as cash reserve ratio (CRR) and portion keeping in the bank itself as statutory liquidity ratio (SLR), after reserving these two ratios they advance the remaining part as a loan to borrowers.

**Q. 5. Give two examples of collateral security.**

**Answer:** Collateral is an asset that borrower owns. The collateral can be anything that has monetary value in it. The lender uses that collateral as a guarantee for that which borrower will repay the amount in future.

**Example** land and gold

## **Check Point 02**

**Q. 1. Write any two problems face while talking credit from informal sources.**

**Answer:** A higher rate of interest and the huge cost of borrowing

The credit from the informal source is the getting loans from the money lenders, relatives and many other therefore it will not have any code of conduct and they will charge any rate of interest which will lead to huge cost the borrowers to repay, and lenders can easily exploit the borrowers.

**Q. 2. Write anyone benefit of SHGs?**

**Answer:** SHGs helps reduces the borrowing from the informal sources.

Self Help Groups (SHGs) are small institutions for women to help themselves and make them self-reliant.

**Q. 3. What kinds of issues are discussed in SHGs?**

**Answer:** They discuss social issues such as health, nutrition, domestic violence, etc., and also the problems faced by the group members family and try to help them.

**Q. 4. Who founded the Grameen Bank of Bangladesh?**

**Answer:** Grameen Bank of Bangladesh was founded by Professor Muhammad Yunus, and he was also the recipient of the 2006 Nobel Prize for Peace.

## **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. What are the difficulties of the Barter system?**

**Answer:** • Double coincidence of wants: One of the most difficult of barter system is the double coincidence of wants in which the buyer and seller should agree to sell each other's commodity in exchange even if they are not interested

• Difficulty in finding buyer and seller: It is very difficult to find the buyer who is need of commodity which the seller wants to sell.

• Store of value: the Barter system lacks the property of storing of value because the sold commodities cannot be saved for future use whereas money can be easily saved as a deposit.

**Q. 2. State one advantage of SHGs.**

**Answer:** Self Help Groups (SHGs) are small institutions for women to help themselves and make them self-reliant.

One of the biggest advantages of SHGs is women in both the rural and urban areas become self-sufficient and also helps the poor families to overcome from the collateral for loans.

**Q. 3. What are the formal sources of credit?**

**Answer:** Banks and cooperatives are the main formal sources of credit. The financial institutions that lend according to guidelines of RBI can be termed as a formal source.

A formal source is a source for raising the credit from the institutions which are under RBI or which are performed with a specific format. Therefore it can be more reliable than informal sources.

**Q. 4. Which institution in India does authorize, money as a medium of exchange?**

**Answer:** Reserve Bank of India (RBI) is the institution that authorizes the money as a medium of exchange. RBI is the central bank of India.

RBI is the central authority that can authorize and issue the currency note and coins which are widely accepted as the medium of exchange. They act on behalf of the central government in most of the financial perspective of the country.

**Q. 5. Mention the sources of informal credit.**

**Answer:** Credit from these sources moneylenders, friends, relatives, traders, employers, etc. can be said as informal sources of credit.

The credit from the informal source is the getting loans from the money lenders, relatives and many other therefore it does not have any code of conduct, and they charge any rate of interest which leads to huge cost the borrowers to repay, and lenders can easily exploit the borrowers.

**Q. 6. How do currency notes act as a medium of exchange?**

**Answer:** It is the authorization of the RBI of currency notes and coins which makes it act as a medium of exchange.

In India, the RBI issues the currency on behalf of the central government. It is the law in India that legalizes the currency notes as a medium of exchange.

**Q. 7. What are the different types of bank deposits?**

**Answer:** Deposit is the form of savings in which the account holders save their money in their bank account by depositing. Bank also accept the deposit from the account holders and also provide interest rate for depositing, this makes the people save as deposit instead of holding extra cash in hand.

- **Demand deposit:** Deposit in the bank can be withdrawn by the customer on demand is called demand deposit.

- **Fixed deposit:** In fixed deposit, the deposit cannot be withdrawn before the term specified. The rate of interest for a fixed deposit will be higher than the demand deposit.
- **Recurring deposit:** When the depositor deposits the fixed amount every month for a certain period is known as recurring deposit.

**Q. 8. Why do bank demand collateral while issuing a loan?**

**Answer:** Collateral is an asset that borrower owns. The collateral can be anything that has monetary value in it. The bank demands the collateral for the guarantee against their repayment for the credit. Collateral can be land, building, gold, vehicle, etc.

**Q. 9. Write a short note on terms of credit.**

**Answer:** The interest rate, collateral, documents required and mode of repayment altogether comprises terms of credit. The terms of credit may vary from one lender to another lender. The interest rate which is specified in terms of credit must be paid by the borrower till the end of the loan agreement. Collateral is an asset that borrower owns. The collateral can be anything that has monetary value in it. The bank demands the collateral for the guarantee against their repayment for the credit. Collateral can be land, building, gold, vehicle, etc. Documents required can be any document that bank needs from the borrower to advance him a loan; it can be income certificate, voter ID card, etc. Mode of repayment must be as per the specification of the bank. Currently, there are many easy modes of payment such as online transfer, UPI payment, bank deposit etc.

**Q. 10. Explain loans from cooperatives.**

**Answer:** Loans from the bank cannot be availed by all the citizens. The poor farmers cannot get the loan from the bank by mortgaging the collateral and afford all the credentials prescribed in terms of credit. The cooperatives is a voluntary organization which includes certain groups; they remove the problem by advancing the loan to the farmers with a low-interest rate. The cooperative is not only for the farmer society but there also many societies which have formed societies but only a few have registered under RBI. One of the major sources of raising credit in the rural area is cooperatives; there are several types of cooperatives such as

- Farmer cooperatives
- Workers cooperatives
- Weavers cooperatives

**For example:**

In a farmer cooperative, there will be many farmers as members, and they discuss the common issues faced in agriculture. These cooperatives help the farmers to buy the equipment, seed and other essential goods that are needed for agriculture. The loan process will not be rigid as per the banks.



**Q. 11. 'The Rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange'. Explain.**

**Answer:** In India, the rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange because of the authentication of the Reserve Bank of India (RBI). RBI plays an essential role in printing the currencies, there is no other authority other than RBI has the power to issue the currency and it has the sole authority. RBI is the central bank of India which on behalf of the central government in financial matters. It is the law that legalizes the use of rupee as a medium of exchange anywhere in India. No person can refuse the Rupee for the transaction; if he refuses, then he can be sued by law. Therefore it is the law that makes the rupee as a widely accepted as a medium of exchange in the country.

**Q. 12. From where can small farmers get cheap loans?**

**Answer:** Most of the formal sources of credit are cheap compared to the informal sources. Even though banks advance the loans with cheaper interest rate many farmers are not able to avail that loan due to terms of credit (formalities), therefore in cooperatives and Self Help Groups (SHGs) advance the loans with lesser formalities. The cooperatives and SHGs have lesser formalities because these are formed by the farmer groups itself, and they know who is actually in need of the loans. The cooperatives are voluntary organizations which include certain groups; they remove the problem by advancing the loan to the farmers with a low-interest rate. Self Help Groups (SHGs) is the small institution for the women to help themselves and make the women self-reliant, these small institutions may help to overcome the problem of farmers family.

**Q. 13. Why is it important to have control over the formal sector loans by the Government of India?**

**Answer:** RBI is the central government institution that controls all formal sector loans. All the commercial banks and many other financial institutions are supervised under RBI. RBI is the central bank of India, and it is the apex bank in the country. One of the main function of the central bank is to supervise all the commercial banks. It is important to have control because

- When commercial banks advance the credit without any ratios and then loans will become cheaper which will lead increase in the borrowers, and that will increase the credit in the economy which in turn will lead to inflation. Therefore mere control over credit is essential for the economy.
- To control the credit, the central bank increases or decreases the cash reserve ratio (CRR) which is kept as a reserve by all commercial banks in the central bank. When the economy is in inflation (continuous rise in the price level), then the central bank will increase the CRR which will reduce the lending capacity of the commercial bank and the process is reversed when there is deflation.
- The control of the central bank also reduces the exploitation. When it is not monitored by any authority, then start exploiting by charging a higher interest rate, advancing less value for the mortgage, etc. as the exploitation done by the informal sector.

**Q. 14. Distinguish Between modern and traditional forms of money.**

**Answer:** Modern money

Modern money is anything that is widely accepted for a transaction and which has a monetary value. A modern form of money includes paper notes and coins. Other than these two there are many types of money there are e-money, mobile wallet are some types which are as money currently in our economy. Best fit example of new forms of money that is e-money is Paytm which is widely accepted nowadays. New forms of e-money are not accepted in rural areas by the person who has lack of knowledge of the internet. Paper notes and coins are accepted everywhere in India because of it the promissory note issued by the RBI. All the modern money have the function of the store of value.

**Traditional money**

Before the advent of paper notes and coins, people used different types of coins such as gold, silver, copper which was issued by the government and have a seal of the government in it. Before the use of coins, goods such as cattle and grains were used for the transaction purpose by the people. The traditional money had less store of value than modern money. The store of value means the money which we save for our future use; goods cannot be saved since it perishes. Therefore, it lacks the store of value function.

**Q. 15. “Cheap and affordable credit is essential for poor households both in rural and urban areas”. In the light of this statement explain the social and economic values attached to it.**

**Answer:** Loan is an essential element that is involved in a poor household's families. Loans are taken to improve the standard of living, to afford the things which are costly, to attain a better health facility, procure the better agricultural equipment, etc. Loans help them to solve these common problems, but loans are received by paying an interest rate against it. The rate of interest must be small and affordable for the poor households so that they can pay back the loan amount with their incomes. When the interest rates are very high, then the credit becomes very expensive that poor households may not be able to pay the amount with their small income.

Cheap loans will provide the opportunity to poor families to pursue higher education by educational loans, increase the production in agriculture by providing farmers loan, likewise, there are business loans, vehicle loans, gold loan, etc. These loans provide an opportunity for the poor people to procure the items which they cannot buy due to low income.

**Q. 16. Explain the role of Self Help Groups in empowering women.**

**Answer:** Self Help Groups are voluntary organizations formed by women to enhance the microcredit for the members in it, and the women members get to indulge in the

entrepreneurial activities such as run a canteen, small shops, etc. This self-help group was established to empower the women, and the empowerment of women will not only improve her, but it also improves the family as a whole which also contributes to the economic development of the country. Basics of self-help groups for women: • It helps women to create new small enterprises with low capital investment and by employing the members itself.

- It improves the women employment opportunity, increases the income of the family and also GDP of the country.

- It is one of the easiest ways of microcredit. Credit will be given to a person who is actually in need of it.

- Due to this programme, the women group start to get aware of the social issues, and they will try to educate the girl child in the family which will increase the female literacy rate.

**Q. 17. Modern banking system plays an important role in the country's economic development. Briefly explain.**

**Answer:** Banks play a very crucial role in the country's economic development. Banks are an important link between the savers and investors. Banks accept the excess savings from the people, and they lend to investors after keeping a fraction of ratio with the central bank. The producers and manufacturer borrow the money from the bank, and they invest the amount in their business. They expand the business or create new enterprises in which a number of people will be employed which will, in turn, increase the employment opportunity. The banks provide the interest for the deposit we keep in the bank which is better than holding the cash in hand. But the lending rate of interest will always higher than saving interest because that is the only profit for the bank. The new investments create new capital formations, employment, and infrastructure and so on. The importance of the banking system through further points is discussed below:

- **Credit creation**

One of the main functions of the banking system is credit creation. It is the banks that create credit for the producers to invest in the economy. The banks make the credit available by accepting the deposit from the people. The investment of the investors makes the economy better off, and investment is made available by the bank.

- **Capital formation**

The essential part of economic development is capital formation which can be efficiently done by the banking system. Capital formation means the increase in the capital stock of the country. Capital stock is one of the indicators that will provide the growth of the country.

- **Transfer the fund from unproductive to productive channel**

Banks help transfer the fund which is kept idle with people as excess money to investment which is a productive channel. The saving is pulled from the various sources to increase the productivity of the economy.

- **Governments bank**

The government gets the loan for introducing new schemes and financing debt from the Reserve Bank of India (RBI). The RBI acts as the bank for the government for proposing the developmental activities.

- **Special banks**

Modern banking has emerged with a wide range of network throughout the country. There are some banks which are specialized for some sectors of the economy such as National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development (NABARD) which is especially for agriculture and rural development, Industrial Development Bank of India (IDBI) which is only for industrial development and so on. These type of sector banks concentrate on their sectors activities which lead to growth in all the sectors simultaneously.

### **Q. 18. How does a Self Help Group function?**

**Answer:** Currently, in India, the banking system has emerged as an important link between savers and investors. The main motive of the bank is to accept the deposit and lend that deposit as a loan to investors. In a country like India, an ordinary person does not have any excess money to save as a deposit in the bank especially in rural areas. Apart from that, the banks charge the customer if a minimum balance is not maintained in the account.

Self Help Groups help to overcome the problem of saving for the ordinary person. Self Help Group is a voluntary organization formed by the women or men to enhance the microcredit for the members in it. The members of the organization save their money by fixing an amount to be deposited weekly, the amount will be such everyone can afford that. That deposited money can be advanced as a loan to any of the member in the group who is actually in need of it, but the loan will be advanced by the consent of the group members. There is transparency in the working of the organization because all the group members are from the same village and all of them will be neighbours.

When the Self Help group is registered, they can be linked to the bank through the 'SHGs linkage programme' under NABARD. When they are linked, they can get loans with the low-interest rate from the commercial banks in which they can accumulate the capital on their own. They accumulate capital by investing the money in small enterprises in which all the members can be employed in which they get self-sustained, and their standard of living rises. Currently, there are 2.2 million SHGs, representing 33 million members according to the estimates of the NABARD. These estimates are only those which have linked through the Linkage Programme, the southern region of India is well functioning in SHGs through this programme.

**Q. 19. How can rural poor be encouraged to take loans from the formal sectors of credit? Explain.**

**Answer:** Rural poor depends more on the informal source of credit due to lack of awareness and ease of availability. There are steps that can encourage them to take loans from the formal sectors. The major steps are discussed below:

- **Bring awareness**

Make aware to rural poor that formal source of credit can be obtained with much lower interest rate than the informal sources. They must also be aware of the debt trap they are facing, and the exploitation done by the informal source lenders.

- **Cooperatives**

Establishing the cooperative banks in all the rural areas will help the rural poor to get rid of the informal source lenders as there will be more options for taking a loan. The employees in the bank must be sensitized to deal with a poor, uneducated rural person.

- **SHGs**

Promoting more number of Self Help Groups (SHGs) which will promote the rural poor to save the money by depositing it weekly and when the SHGs are registered, they will be aware of the formal source of credit. Members of the SHGs should also take an initiative to bring awareness about the formal source of credit throughout the village.

- **Imposing law**

A law must be enacted to control the informal sources of credit via money lenders. Those money lenders who lend money for higher interest must be punished under the law.

- **Terms of credit**

The interest rate, collateral, documents required and mode of repayment altogether comprises of terms of credit. The terms of credit for advancing a loan from the banks should not be very rigid. The documents required must be such that the rural poor can afford it.

**Q. 20. Describe four major sources of credit for households in India.**

**Answer:** There are different sources of credit available for the households in India that too with an affordable interest rate. The major sources of credit for households in India are:

- **Commercial banks**

It is one of the formal sources of credit. Commercial banks make up a significant role for the source of credit. The banks accept deposit from the households who have excess

money advance loans to the households who are in need of it. It is one of the easiest ways of getting a loan for the households.

- **SHGs**

Self Help Group is a voluntary organization formed by the women to enhance the microcredit for the members in it, and the women members get to indulge in the entrepreneurial activities such as run a canteen, small shops, etc.

- **Cooperatives**

The cooperatives is a voluntary organization which includes certain groups; they remove the problem by advancing the loan to the farmers with a low-interest rate. The cooperative is not only for the farmer society, but there are many societies, but only a few have registered under RBI. One of the major sources of raising credit in the rural **area is cooperatives**

- **Regional Rural Banks**

These banks are also known as Grameen Bank. These banks are mainly set with concentrating the rural areas in India. It is being regulated by the National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development (NABARD). Grameen Bank of Bangladesh was founded by Professor Muhammad Yunus, and he also received the 2006 Nobel Prize for Peace.

- **Money Lenders**

The money lender is the informal source of credit which is not encouraging in India. The money lends their money to the households for the higher interest rate for making a profit for them.

# Globalization and the Indian Economy

---

## Check Point 01

**Q. 1. Write the names of any two industries where MNCs have increased their investment.**

**Answer:**

- Automobiles
- Telecommunication
- Fast food chains

Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. MNCs increase and decrease their investment based on the demand for their commodities in the global market. In recent times, the demand for automobiles (especially cars), communication devices like mobiles and fast food chains have the greatest demand thus encouraging the firms to invest more on these sectors.

**Q. 2. Write the names of any two Indian MNCs.**

**Answer:**

- Larsen and Toubro (L&T)
- Aditya Birla group
- Infosys

Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. Indian MNCs are those companies that have their headquarters and origin in India. They are Indian companies that have their markets globally.

**Q. 3. Name any two modes of linking production across countries.**

**Answer:** MNCs generally link the production across countries by three methods. It can be stated as-

- Producing jointly with local companies
- Purchasing local companies
- Placing orders with local companies

Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. They try to

integrate and control the production across countries where close markets, low labour and high profits are earned. They control the market to maintain their economic and social power and their marketing network.

**Q. 4. What is the name of the Indian company that was taken over by the US Company Cargill Foods?**

**Answer:** US Company Cargill Foods has taken over a small Indian company- Parakh Foods.

One of the important ways through which MNCs expand their production is by taking over the well-performing local companies and using their name and reputation. In this case, Cargill Foods purchased Parakh Foods that had a very good reputation and marketing network. This would give Cargill Foods the advantage of their status.

**Q. 5: Which products are supplied by local companies and sold by MNCs as its brand?**

**Answer:** Garments, footwear and sport items are generally produced locally but are mostly sold by MNCs under their brand name.

An important method by which MNCs gain control over the local companies is to place the orders for their products locally. This will reduce their cost of production and also reduce the risk of local competition. These products are sold to MNCs which sell them under their own brands.

## **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. What does Cargill Food India Limited produce?**

**Answer:** Cargill Food creates and maintains connections across the global food system with the motto 'to help the world thrive'. They are the world's one of the leading traders of grains and oilseeds including wheat, corn, barley, pulses, vegetable oil and animal nutrition products. Besides this, they also have global market for edible oils, fats and flours under many brands like Nature Fresh, Leonardo Olive Oil, Rath and Sunflower and many more.

**Q. 2. Which international organisation look after the liberalisation of foreign trade?**

**Answer:** World Trade Organisation is the important international organisation that looks after the liberalisation of foreign trade. Trade liberalisation requires the countries to remove their existing barriers and restrictions by removing taxes, tariffs and quotas on the imported and exported goods. The objective of WTO is to ensure free trade practices globally.

**Q. 3. Give one example of an MNC in India and an Indian MNC.**



**Answer:** Multi-National Corporations functioning in India are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. Its origin can be in any country, but may have their agencies in all the countries.

E.g. - Microsoft (U.S), Nestle (Switzerland)

Indian MNCs are those companies that have both their headquarters and origin in India. They are Indian companies that have their market globally.

E.g. – Infosys, Aditya Birla group

#### **Q. 4: Name the group of countries which dominate the WTO.**

**Answer:** World Trade Organisation is an important international organisation that looks after the liberalisation of foreign trade. It was established in 1995 for the regulation of foreign trade and to ensure free trade practices. But WTO is being dominated by the developed countries. They have retained and maintained their trade barriers while developing countries are being forced to liberalise their markets. This has resulted in many debates especially in case of agricultural goods.

#### **Q.5. What are the characteristics of an MNC?**

**Answer:** Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. The main characteristics of MNCs are:

- **Large size:** MNCs are huge organisations that own and control huge resources in terms of capital, technology, people and information. They have large physical and financial assets and bulky sales. They are very mammoth organisations whose monthly budget may even surpass the annual budget of countries.
- **Multi-country operations:** MNCs operate in many different countries. They have a very vast marketing network. Their assets may be diversified in many countries. Thus they carry out their production, marketing and sales in many countries, even in all the continents
- **Unified control:** Even though MNCs have branches in different parts of the world, their marketing, sales and other important decisions will be taken in the headquarters in the home country. Even though each of their office may have decision making bodies, their important decisions will be taken by the central headquarters.
- **Sophisticated technology and professional management:** MNCs always have highly sophisticated and advanced techniques and technology for production. They develop newer cost-reducing methods of production through consistent spending in research and development. Also, they employ the most efficient and professional staffs to handle the organisation. Thus they reap huge profits.

- **Mighty organisations:** Mostly MNCs are very powerful organisations who try to retain their economic and political powers through consistent mergers and acquisitions. They even may have some degree of monopoly due to economic and technical advantage.

#### **Q. 6 How an investment by an MNC benefits the home country?**

**Answer:** Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. The main benefits of MNC to the home country are:

- **Additional investment:** MNCs can be beneficial to the home country as the huge firms with many resources may bring in their additional share of investment. This is particularly beneficial to the developing countries that have scarcity in resources.
- **New and advanced technology:** MNCs bring in with them the latest technology as an investment to the home country. MNCs always have new and advanced technology for operations which can be used by the home countries to increase their production.
- **Increased employment opportunities:** MNCs always bring in with them bulk of employment opportunities. They require qualified and professional employees for the management of their regional offices in the home country. It also increases employment in allied sectors like transportation, IT and other industries. They also generate a lot of other jobs in sectors like footwear and garments when they place orders for the products with the local industries. This increases the employment opportunities in the home country.

#### **Q. 7. State the basic functions of foreign trade.**

**Answer:** Foreign trade or international trade is the exchange of goods and services between countries. It is an important component of the economy. The basic function of international trade is the integration of the markets in different countries. It will give lot of opportunities and openings for the domestic producers and consumers to reach out beyond the domestic market. Producers can sell their commodities to buyers from around the world. Consumers also have the choice to select commodities produced beyond the domestic markets. The prices tend to be equal in both the markets gradually. Thus, foreign trade widens the markets for both produces and consumers and helps in connecting the markets world-wide.

#### **Q. 8. What are trade barriers?**

**Answer:** Trade barriers are restrictions imposed on foreign trade to control and regulate the trade in some or all commodities. It does not ensure free trading of commodities. Government may setup trade barriers to reduce the trade in some foreign commodities in the domestic market. Mostly trade barriers are set up to reduce the volume of imports to the country. Imports are the commodities and services that are brought for sale to the home country. Import taxes is an important form of trade barrier.

#### **Q. 9. How many countries of the world are currently the members of WTO?**

**Answer:** World Trade Organisation is an important international organisation that looks after the liberalisation of foreign trade. It was established in 1995 for the regulation of foreign trade and ensure free trade practices. It is the largest international organisation in the world. Currently WTO has 164 member states. Afghanistan was the last country to become its member on 29 July 2016.

**Q. 10. What are the challenges posed by globalisation?**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment. It is the process of integrating the home country with the foreign countries through the movement of goods, services, investment, technology and people. Some of the challenges posed by globalisation are:

- **Challenges to small traders:** Because of the growing competition from the MNCs, small companies who are unable to withstand the increased competition are shutting down their companies. The unchecked imports of the goods without any restrictions and the aggressive advertising strategies taken by the MNCs has resulted in the closure of many small, domestic industries leading to large unemployment.
- **Uncertain jobs:** Globalisation has resulted in jobless growth. Government has allowed flexibility of labour to attract foreign investment. With the increasing competition in the market, MNCs placing orders for their products in the domestic countries are forcing the domestic producers to employ workers on a temporary basis to reduce their cost of production. Thus, they need not pay them for the whole year and can employ additional workers only during the peak seasons of demand. This results in uncertainty in jobs.
- **Inequality:** Globalisation has resulted in rising inequalities in income and wealth distribution. This has resulted in a rural – urban divide where many of the poor are excluded from the advantages and benefits of globalisation. Because of the strong demand for various essential goods due to increased competition, many poorer sections are adversely affected. This increases the income inequality between the rich and the poor.

**Q. 11. What are the challenges posed by globalisation?**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment. It is the process of integrating the home country with the foreign countries through the movement of goods, services, investment, technology and people. Some of the challenges posed by globalisation are:

- **Challenges to small traders:** Because of the growing competition from the MNCs, small companies who are unable to withstand the increased competition are shutting down their companies. The unchecked imports of the goods without any restrictions and the aggressive advertising strategies taken by the MNCs has resulted in the closure of many small, domestic industries leading to large unemployment.

- **Uncertain jobs:** Globalisation has resulted in jobless growth. Government has allowed flexibility of labour to attract foreign investment. With the increasing competition in the market, MNCs placing orders for their products in the domestic countries are forcing the domestic producers to employ workers for a temporary basis to reduce their cost of production. Thus, they need not pay them for the whole year and can employ additional workers only during the peak seasons of demand. This results in uncertainty in jobs.

- **Inequality:** Globalisation has resulted in rising inequalities in income and wealth distribution. This has resulted in a rural – urban divide where many of the poor are excluded from the advantages and benefits of globalisation. Because of the strong demand for various essential goods due to increased competition, many poorer sections are adversely affected. This increases the income inequality between the rich and the poor.

**Q. 12. Explain any three methods of controlling production across countries by MNCs.**

**Answer:** Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. They try to integrate and control the production across countries where close markets, low labour and high profits are earned. They control the market to maintain their economic and social power and their marketing network. MNCs generally link the production across countries by three methods. It can be explained as-

- **Produce jointly with local companies-** MNCs may set up their production jointly with some local companies of the home country. This benefits the local companies in two ways. MNCs provide them the monetary help they need by additional investment. They also provide them with the latest upgraded technology and equipment for production.

- **Purchase local companies-** This is the most common method through which MNCs expand their production. Because of the huge amount of wealth and assets they own, they can purchase the finest local companies. MNCs can purchase well-performing local companies and expand their production taking advantage of the local company's reputation and name.

E.g. - An American MNC Cargill Foods had purchased an Indian company Parakh Foods that had a large marketing network and high reputation. Thus, Cargill Foods can expand its production.

- **Place orders for products locally-** MNCs may use this method to control the local production. MNCs may place orders for their commodities with the local producers of developing countries. This will reduce their cost of production and also reduce the risk of local competition. MNCs sell these products under their own brand name. MNCs have the authority to determine the price, quality, labour conditions and delivery of these products. It is commonly found in the garments, footwear and sports industries.

**Q. 13. What is the impact of globalisation on the richer section of the society in the urban areas?**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment. It is the process of integrating the home country with the foreign countries through the movement of goods, services, investment, technology and people.

Globalisation has resulted in greater competition among the producers. Producers in the home countries compete with the foreign produces and products thus improving the quality of the goods and services produced. This has serious implications especially to the richer sections of people in the urban areas. This greater competition has resulted in the improved standards of the products produced at lower price. This increased quality of products at lower prices has raised their standard of living significantly.

MNCs are also investing immensely in sectors like automobiles, communications and others industries. This has improved the choices of buyers, thus increasing the welfare of the richer sections of the society in urban areas.

**Q. 14. Explain the impact of flexible labour law on workers.**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment. It is the process of integrating the home country with the foreign countries through the movement of goods, services, investment, technology and people. Flexibility in labour laws is an important impact of globalisation.

Government is providing many incentives for the MNCs to attract foreign companies. In the organised sector, the rights of the workers are protected. But MNCs are allowed to overlook many of these rules. One such incentive provided to the MNCs is flexibility in labour laws. According to this, the companies are allowed to hire workers for short periods of time when the pressure of work is more, rather than hiring them on a regular basis. This is a way to reduce the cost of production for the companies. With the increasing competition in the market, MNCs placing orders for their products in the domestic countries are forcing the domestic producers to employ workers on a temporary basis to reduce their cost of production. Thus, they need not pay them for the whole year and can employ additional workers only during the peak seasons of demand. Also, workers are made to work overtime, but they are paid less. This results in uncertainty in jobs.

**Q. 15. Briefly describe how IT helps in making globalisation successful.**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment. It is the process of integrating the home country with the foreign countries through the movement of goods, services, investment, technology and people. Information and Communication Technology (IT) is an important driving force for the success of globalisation.

Telecommunication facilities, especially the internet has significantly contributed to the success of globalisation. The development of services like e-banking has increased the pace in which transactions are carried out around the world. Today, the world is just a click away. IT has facilitated and improved communication, lowered the cost of transportation thus helping to transport goods to other countries cheaply and has ensured more co-operation among firms through increased networking. It has contributed to the development of advanced technology of production and their transmission throughout the world.

The development of financial and logistic services is the main carrier of an improved globalised world. The establishment of call centres and other allied services in other countries has also contributed to growth in service sector. Sophisticated technologies helps in instant communication throughout the world thus making globalisation a success story.

**Q. 16. Explain three conditions that helps the MNCs to set up a production unit in another country.**

**Answer:** Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. There are many aspects that MNCs consider while starting a production unit in a foreign country. Some of these conditions are:

- **Closeness to market:** An important factor that MNCs consider before establishing their production centres is the proximity to market. They must be able to sell the commodities produced in the market without any difficulties, especially in the case of perishable commodities. They must have easy access to markets and consumers for effectively selling their products.
- **Low cost of labour:** MNCs will establish their production centres in places where the cost of labour is less. They must have the economic situation in which they are able to recruit both highly skilled works and unskilled workers at a lower wage rate. This forces MNCs to establish their production units in developing countries where people are ready to work at lower wage rates.
- **Availability of factors of production:** MNCs will establish their production units in places where other factors of production are easily available. Availability of raw materials for production is a very crucial concern. MNCs generally set up their production units close to raw material hubs if they are heavy and bulky. Transportation facility is also an important factor for easy access to markets and raw material hubs. It is the mode by which production centres and consumers are connected. They must also consider the availability of land resources, power and the development of capital markets for raising funds.
- **Government policies:** MNCs establish their production units in places where the government policies are favourable. If strict legislations and huge taxes are being

imposed by the government, MNCs will be reluctant to establish their production centres. Generally, the governments will offer them incentives for attracting foreign capital and investment.

**Q. 17. 'Globalisation can't be successful without liberalisation.' How?**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment. It is the process of integrating the home country with the foreign countries through the movement of goods, services, investment, technology and people. Globalisation is the driving force of the 21st century.

Globalisation became a success only because of liberalisation of the economy. Liberalisation is the removal of all the barriers and restrictions set by the government. Government uses barriers to decide on the quantity of imports and exports in the economy. But the barriers restricted the flow of investment and commodities to the domestic market. The removal of these barriers has resulted in the inflow of huge investment and the establishment of many new companies by MNCs. It has expanded the markets and widened the choice of consumers. Integrating the home economy with foreign economies on the one hand, but imposing many restrictions on MNCs on the other would have only restrictive impacts on the economy.

Thus, globalisation would have been an utter failure if the economy was restricted and controlled by many rules and regulations. Liberalisation of both trade and investment has thus enabled globalisation.

**Q. 18. 'International trade is the measure of any country's economic wealth.' Explain.**

**Answer:** Foreign trade or international trade is the exchange of goods and services between countries. It is an important component of the economy. International trade can be stated as the measure of any country's economic wealth.

International trade helps in the integration of the markets in different countries. It gives a lot of opportunities and openings for the domestic producers and consumers to reach out beyond the domestic market. Producers can sell their commodities to buyers from around the world. Consumers also have the choice to select commodities produced beyond the domestic markets. The prices tend to be equal in both the markets gradually. Thus, foreign trade widens the markets for both producers and consumers and helps in connecting the markets world-wide.

International trade improves the quality of the commodities produced in the home country. With the increasing foreign competition, producers of the home country would be forced to improve the production techniques and adopt advanced technologies for production. This will help in the production of more sophisticated commodities in the home market.

International trade also brings in significant foreign exchange earnings through exports. Exports are the commodities produced in the home countries that are sold in foreign markets. This will bring in foreign earnings to the country and will improve the economic position of the home country. Improved trade will also result in higher foreign investment in the home country.

Thus, international trade can be rightly considered as an 'engine of growth'.

**Q. 19. Explain three ways in which pressure of competition due to globalisation has significantly changed the life of Indian workers.**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment. It is the process of integrating the home country with the foreign countries through the movement of goods, services, investment, technology and people. Globalisation has created many employment opportunities for both skilled and unskilled workers in many sectors like transportation, IT and other service sectors. But the extreme integration of the economy and the pressure of competition has negatively affected the workers with a higher intensity. Some of the challenges faced by them are:

- **Challenges to small traders:** Because of the growing competition from the MNCs, small companies who are unable to withstand the increased competition are shutting down their companies. The unchecked imports of the goods without any restrictions and the aggressive advertising strategies taken by the MNCs has resulted in the closure of many small, domestic industries leading to large unemployment. The import of cheap, highly advertised commodities has created brand domination in many sectors. This has rendered many workers unemployed. Batteries, plastics, toys, tyres and foodstuff are some industries where the small manufacturers are worst hit.

- **Uncertainty in jobs:** Government is providing many incentives for the MNCs to attract foreign companies. In the organised sector, the rights of the workers are protected. But MNCs are allowed to overlook many of these rules. One such incentive provided to the MNCs is flexibility in labour laws. According to this, the companies are allowed to hire workers for short periods of time when the pressure of work is more, rather than hiring them on regular basis. This is a way to reduce the cost of production for the companies. With the increasing competition in the market, MNCs placing orders for their products in the domestic countries are forcing the domestic producers to employ workers on a temporary basis to reduce their cost of production. Thus, they need not pay them for the whole year and can employ additional workers only during the peak seasons of demand. Also, workers are made to work overtime, but they are paid less. This results in uncertainty in jobs.

- **Unemployment:** Globalisation has resulted in jobless growth. The employment opportunity created through globalisation is not sufficient enough to absorb the entire Indian workforce. On the top, the technology revolution brought about by globalisation has rendered many unemployed. Many jobs earlier performed by human labour is now



replaced by machines. The replacement of human labour by machines has increased the unemployment level in the economy.

**Q. 20. How do local companies get two-fold production benefits through MNCs?**

**Answer:** Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. There are many aspects that MNCs consider while starting a production unit in a foreign country. MNCs work long with local companies to expand production by producing jointly with local companies, purchasing local companies and placing orders with local companies. This has two-fold production benefits to the local companies. They are:

- **Additional investment:** MNCs can be beneficial to the home country as the huge firms with many resources may bring in their additional share of investment. This is particularly beneficial to the local firms in developing countries that have scarcity in resources. This increases the quantity of resources available to the local firms to expand their production. This additional resources can be used for expanding their production potential.

- **New and advanced technology:** MNCs have highly sophisticated and advanced techniques and technology for production. They will always develop newer cost-reducing methods of production through consistent spending in research and development. Thus, MNCs bring in with them the latest technology as an investment to the home country. It can be utilised by the home countries to increase their production. The improved techniques can also contribute to the development of new technology in other organisations. Thus it will result in a technology transfer.

**Q. 21. 'Large companies with huge wealth, power and reach can manipulate the market in various ways.' Justify the statement with suitable examples.**

**Answer:** Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. They are large companies with huge wealth, power and reach who can manipulate the market in various ways.

- **Brand intimacy:** MNCs can create a sense of brand intimacy in the minds of the public through heavy advertisements. With the heavy advertisement expenditure and an attracting tagline, they can capture the market easily than companies having less resources. Advertising has created a sense of brand loyalty in the minds of people related to many products. They are not willing to substitute other products in its place. Thus MNCs can manipulate the market.

E.g. – Even though many brands of toothpastes are available in the market, mostly everyone will buy highly advertised brands. No one will bother to buy other local brands.

- **Imaginary diversity:** MNCs can create an assumption in the minds of the people about the characteristic differences in their products. With the heavy publicity, they can

create an imaginary differentiation in their products, even though the inherent characteristic of their product may be the same relative to other products in the market. This is the main way by which MNCs manipulate their buyers.

E.g. – It can be found in the branding and marketing of soft drinks. They may have similar taste, colour and composition, but are sold under different brands.

- **Artificial demand:** MNCs try and create artificial demand for a commodity. Artificial demand is created by cutting down the supply of a product that is in high demand. This will increase the price of the product which can be again re-introduced at a higher price. They may also re-introduce the same product stating additional specifications in the new model.

E.g. – This is largely found in the telecommunication and mobile industry where artificial demand is created by controlling the supply and new specifications are added each day.

## **Q. 22. Explain the good and bad effects of globalisation in Indian industry.**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment. It is the process of integrating the home country with the foreign countries through the movement of goods, services, investment, technology and people. India has been a globalised economy since 1991 after the country faced an economic crisis in the pre-1991 period. After this 27 years of globalisation, the economy has experienced both ups and downs because of this increased integration of the country with other countries.

### **Some of the advantages that are the result of globalisation are:**

- **Production of standardised, high quality products and services:** Globalisation has resulted in greater competition among the producers. Producers in the home countries compete with the foreign producers and products thus improving the quality of the goods and services produced. This greater competition has resulted in the improved standards of the products produced at a lower price. This increased quality of products at lower prices has raised their standard of living significantly.

- **Improved choice for buyers:** MNCs are investing immensely in sectors like automobiles, communications and others industries. This has improved the choices of buyers. Consumers also have the choice to select commodities produced beyond the domestic markets through international trade.

- **Increased employment opportunities:** Globalisation always brings in bulk of employment opportunities. MNCs will require qualified and professional employees for the management of their regional offices. It will also increase employment in allied sectors like transportation, IT and other industries. They will also generate a lot of other jobs in sectors like footwear and garments when they place orders for the products with the local industries. This increases the employment opportunities for both skilled and unskilled labour.

- **Additional investment:** Globalisation beneficial as the huge MNCs with many resources will bring in their additional share of investment. This is particularly beneficial to the local firms in a developing country like India that has scarcity in resources. This will increase the quantity of resources available to the local firms to expand their production.

Just like a coin, globalisation has also its other side. Even though the economy has highly benefitted through globalisation, it has also resulted in many issues. The extreme integration of the economy and the pressure of competition has posed many challenges. Some of them are:

- **Challenges to small traders:** Because of the growing competition through globalisation from the MNCs, small companies who are unable to withstand the increased competition are shutting down their companies. The unchecked imports of the goods without any restrictions and the aggressive advertising strategies taken by the MNCs has resulted in the closure of many small, domestic industries leading to large unemployment. The import of cheap, highly advertised commodities has created brand domination in many sectors. This has rendered many workers unemployed. Batteries, plastics, toys, tyres and foodstuff are some industries where the small manufacturers are worst hit.

- **Uncertainty in jobs:** Government is providing many incentives for the MNCs to attract foreign companies. In the organised sector, the rights of the workers are protected. But MNCs are allowed to overlook many of these rules. One such incentive provided to the MNCs is flexibility in labour laws. According to this, the companies are allowed to hire workers for short periods of time when the pressure of work is more, rather than hiring them on regular basis. This results in uncertainty in jobs.

- **Unemployment:** Globalisation has resulted in jobless growth. The employment opportunity created through globalisation is not sufficient enough to absorb the entire Indian workforce. On the top, the technology revolution brought about by globalisation has rendered many unemployed. Many jobs earlier performed by human labour is now replaced by machines. The replacement of human labour by machines has increased the unemployment level in the economy.

It can never be said that globalisation should be totally evaded in the economy. But government and other authorities should ensure a fair scheme in which the benefits of the globalisation reaches everyone. This equity is yet to be achieved.

**Q. 23. In what way are MNCs different from national companies? Explain by giving three reasons.**

**Answer:** In today's globalised world, we can find the operation of a variety of business firms in the economy. In today's mixed economic world, many companies co-exist together. They can be MNCs and national companies. MNCs differ from national companies in many aspects. Some of them are:

- **Establishment and operations:** Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. National companies are firms that operate within the boundaries of a particular country. MNCs have regional offices in different parts of the world. National companies are concentrated within a country. MNCs have to control production in different parts of the country while national companies need to control its production activities within the particular country.

- **Resources:** MNCs have a huge customer base across nations that cater to the requirements of people in different parts of the world. They acquire more resources by purchasing local companies, producing along with local companies or placing orders with local companies. Thus, they have more resources under their command. In contrast, national companies have their customer base across the nation and produce and sell the commodities needed by the nation's population using its own country's products and resources.

- **Technology and management:** MNCs will always have highly sophisticated and advanced techniques and technology for production. They will always develop newer cost-reducing methods of production through consistent spending in research and development. Also, they employ the most efficient and professional staffs to handle the organisation and reap huge profits. In contrast, national companies will not have such advanced and sophisticated techniques of production. They mostly take into account the cultural and social background of the country and produce accordingly. Thus, their main aim is to satisfy the needs of the population rather than reaping profits.

Both MNCs and national companies are required for the efficient functioning of the economy. While the latter does not have a big role in globalisation, the former is the forerunner of globalisation in the country.

#### **Q. 24. Explain the whole process in which an MNC works?**

**Answer:** Multi-National Corporations are large companies established in a particular country and has offices, markets and produces and sells its products in many countries. MNCs are huge organisations that own and control huge resources in terms of capital, technology, people and information. They have large physical and financial assets and bulky sales.

MNCs operate in many different countries. They have a very vast marketing network. Their assets may be diversified in many countries. Thus they carry out their production, marketing and sales in many countries, even in all the continents. Even though they have branches in different parts of the world, their marketing, sales and other important decisions will be taken in the headquarters in the home country. Even though each office may have decision making bodies, their important decisions will be taken by the central headquarters.

MNCs will always have highly sophisticated and advanced techniques and technology for production. They will always develop newer cost-reducing methods of production through consistent spending in research and development. Also, they employ the most efficient and professional staffs to handle the organisation. Thus they reap huge profits. There are many aspects that MNCs consider while starting a production unit in a foreign country. Some of these conditions are closeness to market, low cost of labour, availability of factors of production, government policies, etc.

**Q. 25 What do you understand by 'fairer rules'? How far it is beneficial for all. State some important points.**

**Answer:** Globalisation is the reality of the 21st century. Globalisation is the interconnection between countries through the expansion of foreign trade and foreign investment.

It has created many positive impacts in the economy. It has resulted in the production of more standardised products, generation of more employment opportunities, improved the choice of buyers, created additional investment and has contributed to technology transfer. But it has adversely affected the lives of small traders by closing down the local companies. It has also contributed to wide-spread unemployment, uncertainty in jobs and has created huge disparity in income distribution. Such a situation demands for a fair globalisation and enacting fairer rules.

Globalisation can be fair only when its benefits are being distributed to every section of the society. Some of the guidelines that can be followed for the implementation of fairer rules are:

- Government can implement policies to ensure that the interest of both the richer sections and the poorer sections of the society are safeguarded. Government can implement rules for fairer distribution of income. Richer sections can be taxed more and the income can be re-distributed.
- Government must ensure that the interest of workers in both organised and unorganised sectors are protected. Strict labour laws must be enforced to reduce the uncertainty in jobs while being employed in MNCs.
- Government must make sure that the small, local producers are not eliminated from the market because of the excessive competition. They must be protected from the excessive imports of foreign goods and services. Thus the government can ensure the protection of such industries from unfair foreign competition till they are strong enough to face the market.
- WTO is the major international organisation that is supervising and regulating the functioning of the economy in the globalised world. But WTO is being dominated and controlled by the developed countries. The government can integrate with other developing countries facing the same problem and raise their issues to WTO thus ending their domination.

- Developing countries can negotiate with WTO for fairer rules regarding the import and export of agricultural commodities. Developed countries have retained and maintained their trade barriers and are providing subsidies to agricultural producers. On the other hand, developing countries are being forced to liberalise their markets. Government can thus negotiate with WTO for equal and fair rules.

Only with a fair globalisation, we can ensure that the benefits of globalisation is being enjoyed by every sections of the society. This will led to the creation of a more sustainable economy in the future.

# Consumer Rights

---

## Check Point 01

### Q. 1. How does consumer participate in the market place?

**Answer:** Consumers participate in the market when they purchase goods and services that which they are in need of. These will be mostly final goods which will be ready for consumption.

### Q. 2. In which situation a consumer finds himself exploited?

**Answer:** Individual consumers often find themselves in a weak position. Whenever there is a complaint regarding the goods and services that had been brought, the seller tries to shift whole responsibility to the consumer as if they are not responsible for anything.

### Q. 3. In what ways producer create artificial scarcity?

**Answer:** Producers create the artificial scarcity in the way of black marketing and hoarding. The term "hoarding" may include the practice of obtaining and holding resources to create artificial scarcity, thus reducing the supply, to increase the price, so that they can be sold to customers for profit. Black marketing is market place which takes place outside government-sanctioned channel.

### Q. 4. What necessitates the origin of Consumer Movement in India?

**Answer:** The consumer movement necessitated out of dissatisfaction of the consumers as many inequitable practices were being indulged in by the sellers. There was no legal system available to consumers to protect them from mistreatment in the marketplace.

### Q. 5. What kind of consumer disputes are settled consumer courts?

**Answer:** The consumer court addresses all kinds of disputes that are faced by the consumers while dealing into a transaction. But the consumer must have proper documents that are favourable to the judgment. Consumers have many rights which are made as mandatory such as Right to be Informed, Right to Choose, Right to seek Redressal, Right to Represent and so on. All these rights are being addressed by the consumer courts in India.

## Check Point 02

### Q. 1. When does consumer have the right to be Protected?

**Answer:** A consumer has the right to be protected against when the marketing of goods and delivery of services are hazardous to life and property. Producers need to strictly follow the required safety rules and regulations.

**Q. 2. What is required to maintain safety and quality of products and services?**

**Answer:** International standards must be set up to the entire products to ensure the quality of the product. The standards must be well verified and tested by the experts. The best-known standard in India is ISI for iron and steel, Agmark for food items and so on.

**Q. 3. State anyone example of goods that requires special attention to safety.**

**Answer:** Special attention is required to ensure the safety of consumers. One of the goods which needs special attention to safety is a pressure cooker. The pressure cooker has safety valve, which if defective can cause a serious accident. The manufacturers should ensure high standards and the consumers should read all the instructions given on the box of the pressure cooker.

**Q. 4. Write any two cases that violate consumer's right to Choose.**

**Answer:** Telecom industry

In the current scenario, the telecom industry is charging higher rates for the recharge the mobile. They are offering only unlimited packs and also consumer are forced to buy mobiles offer acquiring sim card, therefore, consumers are only allowed to choose what they offer.

Another instance is when gas dealer forces the consumer that he has to buy the stove for buying the gas. Then consumer is denied the right to choose.

**Q. 5. What should be taken by the buyers so that it can be used as evidence in the future?**

**Answer:** If the consumer has been to the transaction with the producer, he should keep certain documents. It should be kept because they can be used as evidence. They are:

- Bill of the commodity
- Payment receipt
- Product which has been bought

These are the main things that are to be kept by the consumer

### **Self Assessment**

**Q. 1. Name three voluntary organizations that promote consumer movement in India.**

**Answer:** The role of the voluntary organization was widely important in the Consumer Movement in India. There are now more than 800 such organizations India.

- Consumer Guidance Society of India
- All India Consumer Protection Organization



- The Consumers Eye India

**Q. 2. State the six rights a consumer has under COPRA, 1986.**

**Answer:** The consumer has six rights under the Consumer Protection Act (COPRA), 1986

- Right to be Protected
- Right to be Informed
- Right to be Assured
- Right to be Heard
- Right to seek Redressal

**Q. 3. Some instances of consumer behaviour are cited below. Cite the error in consumer behaviour in each case and suggest possible remedies.**

**a. Buying a bottle of medicine without checking the first date of expiry.**

**b. Buying sweets weighed with the box.**

**c. Not asking for a bill from the doctor.**

**Answer: (a) Right to be informed:** the consumer has the right to be informed about the defect of the product and expiry of the product. The suggestion is that sue the shopkeeper for selling the product which is out of date with necessary documents, and also he can seek for the replacement of the product.

**(b) Right to be informed:** The consumer has the right to be informed about the quantity and weight of the product. The consumer can seek to weigh the product before buying the product.

**(c) Right to Choice:** Consumer has the right to choose whether to continue with the treatment or to ask the bill from the doctor. But bill acts as a document when it comes to seeking Redressal.

**Q. 4. When was consumer Movement organised for the first time in India?**

**Answer:** The consumer movement arose out of dissatisfaction of the consumers as many unfair practices were being indulged in by the sellers. There was no legal system available to consumers to protect them from exploitation in the marketplace. In India, the consumer movement as a 'social force' originated with the necessity of protecting and promoting the interests of consumers against unethical and unfair trade practices. Consumer Movement arose in the 1960s, and it continued till 1986 when the Consumer protection was enacted to safeguard the interest of the consumers.

**Q. 5. What major step was taken by Indian Governments in 1986 for consumer protection?**

**Answer:** A major step taken in 1986 by the Indian government was the enactment of the Consumer Protection Act 1986, popularly known as COPRA. Consumer Protection Act, 1986 enables the consumer to enhance major six rights, and they are

- Right to be Protected
- Right to be Informed
- Right to be Assured
- Right to be Heard
- Right to seek Redressal

**Q. 6. Name the umbrella body of 240 organisations from over 100 countries for consumer movements.**

**Answer:** Consumers International has become an umbrella body to over 220 member organizations from over 115 countries.

**Q. 7. Explain the right to choice with the help of an example.**

**Answer:** Any consumer who receives a service in whatever capacity, regardless of age, gender and nature of service, has the right to choose whether to continue to receive the service. The definition of Right to Choose as per the Consumer Protection Act 1986 is 'the right to be assured, wherever possible, to have access to a mixture of goods and services at competitive prices'. For regulating the market place, there is just one factor mandatory and that is competition. The existence of cartels, oligopolies and monopolies prove to be counterproductive to consumerism. It is rarely seen that people want to switch the power company, in the times when they have a faint at home. It is interesting to know that even micro markets like fish vendors in some cities are known to plan and discourage the consumers' bargaining power. No matter what size or form, or span, but the collusion of various companies which sell an analogous kind of product is unethical or say less legal. It can be anticipated that India has to stride for about 20 more years for empowering its citizens fully in this regard.

**For example** gas supply dealers insist that you have to buy the stove from them when you take a new connection. In this case, the consumer has no choice but to go with the given choices.

**Q. 8. Are these the example of consumer exploitation taking in the market? Justify your opinion in each case.**

- a. Hoarding
- b. Black marketing
- c. Adulteration

**Answer: (a)** Yes, hoarding is an example for the consumer exploitation. Consumer exploitation is taking advantage of the consumers. The term "hoarding" may include the practice of obtaining and holding resources to create artificial scarcity, thus reducing the supply, to increase the price, so that they can be sold to customers for profit.

**(b)** The black market is the strategy used to by the seller to sell the commodity in higher by creating the artificial scarcity. This is market place which takes place outside government-sanctioned channel.

**(c)** It is the process of mixing or substituting the identical and undesirable materials in the food items. This will cause heavy loss to the consumers and also leads to many diseases while consuming undesirable commodities. For example Mixing of bricks powder in chili powder, because both are identical and the consumer cannot differentiate it.

**Q. 9. Why is the three-tier quasi-judicial machinery set-up for Redressal of consumer disputes?**

**Answer:** Three-tier quasi-judicial machinery was set up to address consumer disputes. They set up three different levels that are a district, state and national level Redressal for consumer disputes. This consumer Redressal for consumer disputes is popularly known as consumer courts.

District level consumer courts deal with the cases which involve up to 20 lakhs. It will be set as consumer disputes Redressal forum in every district. It provides a free and friendly approach to the consumers. The consumer can approach the district forums without involving any fees.

State level consumer courts deal with the cases which may vary between 20lakhs to 1crore. It is also known as State Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission, and also it has jurisdiction over district forums.

National Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission is the national level court for the whole country which deals with disputes more than one crore. It the apex body of consumer courts.

**Q. 10. Give two arguments in favour of regulating the prices in India.**

**Answer:** Yes, prices should be regulated to control the market in India.

- Price regulation by the government reduces the artificial scarcity that is created by the producers to increase the level of price. When the price of the commodity is being increased the profit of the producers rises, but it will be a loss to the consumers. For protecting the consumers from the rise in the prices for the good price, regulation is essential.

- When the shopkeeper forces to buy the product which has higher prices, then the consumer must know the quality and quantity of the product. The product must be worth the price.

**Q. 11. How important is the role of media in highlighting the various issues related to consumer exploitation? State any three points.**

**Answer:** Mass media is the best way of communication to all within a span of time. The consumer can be made aware of the Consumer Protection Act and much other awareness by the social and mass media communication. There are both print media and electronic media in case of the communication. Electronic media has more impact on society as compared to print media because it is visual aid of information. The press in India has always shown its harmony with the socio-economic problems of this country.

• **Increases the consumer awareness:** it is the media that increases the awareness about the law that is available for the consumers and their role in the market. The consumer gets aware about the consumer laws by the advertisements of the government and recent issues around them. The government and many NGOs engage in awareness programme through media.

The Rajasthan government has introduced the telecast of a talk show Law Point every weekend. It is broadcasted through the All India Radio, Doordarshan and the Community Radio. It is broadcasted through the television every Sunday from 7.00 to 7.30 and via all the All India Radio stations from 5.45 to 6.00. Every legal aspect of the issues would be discussed in the show.

• Media can bring out the products which are not met with the standards of the quality mentioned by the quality assessment organization. When the consumers are aware of the defects of the products, then they will stop the consumption of that product.

When the food product Maggi was said to be added with materials which cause cancer, the demand for that product reduced even though the product was available in market after meeting with wide controversial situations.

**Q. 12. “Consumer movements can be effective only with the cooperation of consumers”. Justify.**

**Answer:** Consumer movements can be effective only when there is voluntary participation of the consumers. The consumer voluntarily takes part in the movement when there are wide spread consumer disputes in the country. Movement cannot when there is only one or two people, there must be a huge volume of people to lead the movement. The consumer movement arose out of dissatisfaction of the consumers as many unfair practices were being indulged in by the sellers. There was no legal system available to consumers to protect them from exploitation in the marketplace. Self-awareness is the first step for the effectiveness of the movement. Awareness is the creation of the process. The consumer must be aware of his rights and duties.

In India, the consumer movement as a 'social force' emerged with the necessity of protecting and promoting the interests of consumers against unethical and unfair trade practices. Extensive food shortages, hoarding, black marketing, adulteration of food and edible oil gave birth to the consumer movement in an organized form in the 1960s. Till the 1970s, consumer organizations were largely engaged in writing articles and holding exhibitions. They formed consumer groups to look into the malpractices in ration shops and overcrowding in the road passenger transport. The emergence of the consumer movement in India was because of increased violations against the consumers.

Because of all these efforts, the movement succeeded in bringing pressure on business firms as well as government to correct business conduct which may be unfair and against the interests of consumers at large. A major step taken in 1986 by the Indian government was the implementation of the Consumer Protection Act 1986, popularly known as COPRA. This movement was effective because of the widespread consumer dispute in India.

**Q. 13. Write about the judicial structure of consumer dispute in India.**

**Answer:** Three-tier quasi-judicial machinery was set up to address consumer disputes. This three-tier quasi-judicial structure was set up under the Consumer Protection Act (COPRA), 1986. The Act set up three different levels that are a district, state and national level Redressal for consumer disputes. This consumer Redressal for consumer disputes is popularly known as consumer courts.

District level consumer courts deal with the cases which involve up to 20 lakhs. It will be set as consumer disputes Redressal forum in every district. It provides a free and friendly approach to the consumers. The consumer can approach the district forums without involving any fees.

State level consumer courts deal with the cases which may vary between 20 lakhs to 1 crore. It is also known as State Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission, and also it has jurisdiction over district forums.

National Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission is the national level court for the whole country which deals with disputes more than one crore. It is the apex body of consumer courts.

**Q. 14. Describe any three legal measures taken by the government to empower the consumer in India.**

**Answer:** To improve the judicial system and give more awareness and education to the people, many legal awareness programmes were designed and launched by the Central Government and various State Governments. The Legal Services Act was passed in 1987 to implement legal services uniformly in the country. Many plans were formulated and implemented to protect the public from unfair actions and to increase social welfare.

**Some major plans and schemes introduced under legal awareness are:**

**Assistance on accidental deaths-** An accidental assistance of Rs. 5 lakhs is provided by the Rajasthan Government in case of the death of registered workers working in the unorganized sector. This is a huge assistance to them as they generally do not receive any benefits as against the workers under the organized sector.

**Rajasthan Vishwakarma Non-Organised Workers Contribution Scheme-** The scheme provides pension benefits for the registered workers of the unorganized sector. Contributable pension benefits are given for them for the protection through life.

**State Insurance and Employment Provident Fund Scheme-** Rajasthan Government has introduced the Insurance and Provident Fund Scheme for the safety of the workers and to ensure them a huge monetary compensation at the time of their retirement. It is being organized on a contributory basis among workers.

#### **Q. 15. How as the consumer movements evolved in India?**

**Answer:** The consumer movement was from the emergence of the dissatisfaction that took place among the consumers, due to the unfair trade practices by the producers or sellers. There was no legal system which favoured the consumers from the exploitations. Eventually, the consumers were not happy with the brands and products which was there in the market. They had no choice other than to avoid buying it or avoid going into the shops. It was supposed that the consumer is the person who should be careful before buying a product, there was no burden levied on the sellers. It took many years in India to bring out the consumer organization, to create awareness amongst the people. This awareness made a drastic shift in the quality of the goods and services on the sellers.

In India, the Consumer Movement originated as a 'social force' for protecting and promoting the consumers against the unethical and unfair trade practices. The consumer movement was organized in the 1960s because of the continuous emergence of the rampant food shortage, hoarding, black marketing, adulteration of food and edible oil. Till 1970's the consumer movement was largely engaged in the writing articles and holding exhibition. They formed the consumer group into look after the malpractices that is taking place in the ration shops and overcrowding in road transport. This led to the upsurge in the number of consumer groups in India.

Another main reason for the evolution of the consumer movement is the demand-supply gap. If the demand for the goods and services exceeds the supply, it creates the weak bargaining power for the consumer and increases the price of the goods and services. This situation can be created by the sellers by the process of the artificial scarcity. Artificial scarcity can be created by the black marketing and hoarding. This is also an unfair practice against the consumers which also contributed to the consumer movement.

Because of these continuous efforts, the movement succeeded in bringing pressure in the business firm as well as government to correct business demeanor which may be

unfair and aligned with the interests of consumers at large. A major step taken in 1986 by the Indian government was the implementation of the Consumer Protection Act 1986, popularly known as COPRA.

**Q. 16. Do you agree that RTI serves to redress consumer grievances?**

**Answer:** Yes, the Right to Information Act enables many rights to the consumers which redress from the consumer disputes. The Right to Information Act was enacted by the Parliament on 15 June 2015. It was approved by both the houses and was legally implemented in the country with the assent of the President on 13 October 2005. It replaces the Freedom of Citizens Act 2002. The act gives the power to every citizen of the country to request and get information from any public authority. They are bound by the act to reply and furnish the information within 30 days of application request. Political parties and private bodies do not come under the purview of the act.

**Under the act, every citizen has the right to:**

- Receive information from any department or office of the State Governments and the Central Government.
- View the documents or records and take certified copies of the same.
- Take the sample materials of their workings.
- Get information on computers, CD, floppy and other storage devices.

The first appeal for getting the information may be made to the officials in the Panchayats, Municipalities, Secretariat and other government departments within 30 days of getting information from the concerned Information Officer. If the information is not furnished within the first 30 days, the concerned applicant may make a second appeal to the State Information Commission.

The act was passed to empower the citizens and promote transparency and accountability in the working of the government. This helps to check corruption and other malpractices in the functioning of the government and the judicial system.

**Q. 17. Which right of a consumer do you think is most important and why?**

**Answer:** All the rights which are incorporated under the Consumer Protection Act (COPRA), 1986 are equally important in all spheres. But among them, the most important would be the Right to Information (RTI) which was enacted by the Parliament on 15 June 2015. It was approved by both the houses and was legally implemented in the country with the assent of the President on 13 October 2005. It replaces the Freedom of Citizens Act 2002. The act gives the power to every citizen of the country to request and get information from any public authority. They are bound by the act to reply and furnish the information within 30 days of application request. Political parties and private bodies do not come under the purview of the act.

**Under the act, every citizen has the right to:**

- Receive information from any department or office of the State Governments and the Central Government.
- View the documents or records and take certified copies of the same.
- Take the sample materials of their workings.
- Get information on computers, CD, floppy and other storage devices.

The first appeal for getting the information may be made to the officials in the Panchayats, Municipalities, Secretariat and other government departments within 30 days of getting information from the concerned Information Officer. If the information is not furnished within the first 30 days, the concerned applicant may make a second appeal to the State Information Commission.

This act is more important because it empowers the citizens and promotes transparency and accountability in the working of the government. This helps to check corruption and other malpractices in the functioning of the government and the judicial system. This act also increases awareness among the citizen in and around the country.

**Q. 18. Name the organisation formed by the United Nations for consumer protection. How does it serve consumers?**

**Answer:** United Nations Guidelines for Consumer Protection (UNGCP) was adopted in 1985 for consumer protection. This was followed after a long campaign by the consumer associations in many countries, with Consumers International (then known as the International Organization of Consumers Union) acting as an interlocutor with the United Nations. At the international level, this has become the foundation for consumer movement. Today, Consumers International has become an umbrella body to over 220 member organizations from over 115 countries.

The Intergovernmental group of experts on consumer protection law and policy has been established to monitor the implementation of the guidelines, provide a forum for consultations, produce research and studies, provide technical assistance, undertake voluntary peer reviews, and periodically update the UNGCP. Its first meeting took place on 17 and 18 October 2016 in Geneva under the auspices of the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development.

The 2015 revision sets up institutional mechanisms for monitoring compliance with the UNGCP, under the management of the Intergovernmental Group of Experts on Consumer Protection Law and Policy, which is to be held under the patronage of UNCTAD.

**The group has the following functions:**

- a. To provide an annual discussion and modalities for many-sided consultations, discussion and exchange of views between the Member States on matters related to the guidelines, in particular, their accomplishment and the experience arising therefrom.



- b.** To undertake studies and research occasionally on consumer protection issues related to the guidelines based on a consensus and the interests of Member States and distribute them with a view to increasing the exchange of experience and giving greater efficiency to the guidelines.
- c.** To conduct deliberate peer reviews of national consumer protection policies of Member States, as implemented by consumer protection authorities.
- d.** To collect and distribute information on matters relating to the overall attainment of the goals of the guidelines and to the suitable steps the Member States have taken at the national or regional levels to promote effective completion of their objectives and principles.
- e.** To provide capacity-building and technical assistance to developing countries and economies in transition in formulating and enforcing consumer protection laws and policies.
- f.** To consider relevant studies, certification, and reports from relevant organizations of the United Nations system and other international organizations and networks, to exchange in sequence on work programmes and topics for consultations and to identify work-sharing projects and cooperation in the provision of technical assistance.
- g.** To make suitable reports and recommendations on the consumer protection policies of Member States, including the purpose and achievement of these guidelines.
- h.** To operate between and report to the United Nations Conference to Review All Aspects of the Set of Multilaterally Agreed Equitable Principles and Rules for the Control of Restrictive Business Practices.
- i.** To conduct a periodic review of the guidelines, when mandated by the United Nations Conference to Review All Aspects of the Set of Multilaterally Agreed Equitable **Principles and Rules for the Control of Restrictive Business Practices.**
- j.** To establish such procedures and methods of work as may be necessary to carry out its mandate.

**Q. 19. “ In India consumer movements is a Social Force”. Explain.**

**Answer:** Consumers are individuals or entities engaged in the purchase of goods and services by the full or partial payment of cash or have made a promise to pay the defined amount after a specified period of time. Consumers are largely oppressed by the sellers and manufacturers by hoarding, the black market, and other malpractices. These malpractices and exploitations have led to the emergence of various consumer movements throughout the country.

The situation in which the buyers do not receive the benefits and services according to the buyer's value or the situation in which the sellers receive or charge the value of commodities higher than its value is known as consumer exploitation. Consumer

movement largely arises because of the dissatisfaction and oppression faced by them in the market. The absence of proper Redressal mechanism forced them to organise themselves for the protection and achievement of their rights.

For many years, it was believed that the consumers were responsible for ensuring that they remained safe from exploitations from the sellers. But because of the development of consumer movements across the world and by the changes in the country's social structures, the consumers started organising themselves collectively to form dominant consumer movements. Thus the consumer movements in India can be characterized as a social movement.

The consumer movement emerged as a social force with the participation from a variety of social group. With the problems of hoarding and other malpractices in the rise in the late 1960s, the consumers slowly started coming together to claim their rights and protection from the exploitative practices of the sellers. The consumer movement involved publishing articles, writing in papers, holding meetings and many other exhibitions throughout the country.

The spread of the consumer movement was very rapid throughout the country. The business firms and the government were forced to conduct business in a fair manner and ensure the protection of their rights. This finally led to the enactment of Consumer Protection Act in 1986.

The consumer movement is still spreading in the country. The success of the movement will ensure the ethical practices by the business houses and firms.

**Q. 20. Mention any six ways by which consumer are exploited by the producers or whole sellers.**

**Answer:** A consumer is any person who consumes and receives satisfaction by paying the value for purchasing any commodity. The consumer can be a consumer of goods or a consumer of services. The situation in which the buyers do not receive the benefits and services according to the buyer's value or the situation in which the sellers receives or charges the value of commodities higher than its value is known as consumer exploitation. Consumer exploitation can be made in many different ways in such major ways are being discussed:

**a. Hoarding**

Consumer exploitation is taking advantage of the consumers. The term "hoarding" may include the practice of obtaining and holding resources to create artificial scarcity, thus reducing the supply, to increase the price, so that they can be sold to customers for profit.

**b. Black marketing**

The black market is the strategy used to by the seller to sell the commodity in higher by creating the artificial scarcity. This is a market place which takes place outside government-sanctioned channel.

**c. Adulteration**

It is the process of mixing or substituting the identical and undesirable materials in the food items. This will cause heavy loss to the consumers and also leads to many diseases while consuming undesirable commodities. For example Mixing of bricks powder in chili powder, because both are identical and the consumer cannot differentiate it.

**d. False claim**

Sellers make a false claim about the performance and quality of their product through advertisements. This false claim may attract consumers who are not aware of the original quality of the product.

**e. Under measurement**

Sellers generally give under measured goods and charge for the actual quantity. This quantity reduction will increase the profit of the sellers but exploit the consumers.

**f. Substandard goods**

Sellers usually sell inferior quality goods in order to make more profit. But they charge the same amount for the goods then the consumer gets substandard goods for higher prices.